BID PACKAGE

PART IV

SPECIFICATIONS

DMH Project# 2019-045A

Installation of Basement & Lobby HVAC System
391 Varnum Avenue
Lowell, MA 01854

THE COMMONWEALTH OF MASSACHUSETTS
EXECUTIVE OFFICE OF HUMAN SERVICES
DEPARTMENT OF MENTAL HEALTH

S P E C I F I C A T I O N S

FOR

INSTALLATION OF LOBBY & BASEMENT HVAC SYSTEM
H. C. SOLOMON MENTAL HEALTH CENTER

AT

397 VARNUM AVENUE
LOWELL, MASSACHUSETTS

PROJECT 2019-045A

DEPARTMENT OF MENTAL HEALTH
OFFICE OF ENGINEERING AND FACILITIES MANAGEMENT
167 LYMAN STREET
WESTBOROUGH, MA 01581

PREPARED BY: FRED BERGSTROM

REVIEWED BY: JOHN O'DONNELL
BRIAN KELLEY

DATE: April 12, 2019

TABLE OF CONTENTS

TABLE OF CONTENTS

SECTION 011000
SUMMARY OF THE WORK

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 CONTRACT REFERENCES

A. Attention is directed to the CONTRACT and GENERAL CONDITIONS and all Sections within Division 1 – GENERAL REQUIREMENTS that are hereby made a part of this Section of the Specifications.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. The following terms shall be applicable to these Specifications:

1. **DMH Project Manager**: Refers to Fred Bergstrom, Massachusetts Department of Mental Health, Engineering and Facilities Management, 167 Lyman Street, Westborough, MA 01581. (508) 616-2245.
2. **DMH Site Director**: Refers to Eva Toscano, Massachusetts Department of Mental Health, 397 Varnum Avenue, Lowell, MA 01854. (978) 322-5059.
3. **DMH Facility Manager**: Refers to Brian Kelley, Massachusetts Department of Mental Health, 397 Varnum Avenue, Lowell, MA 01854. (978) 322-5076.
4. **Designer**: Weston & Sampson, Inc., 55 Walkers Brook Drive, Suite 100 Reading, MA. 01867. Phone: 978-278-3519, 978-532-1900.
5. **Contractor**: Refers to the Contractor who has been awarded the overall contract for the work outlined by the Contract Documents.
6. **Subcontractor**: Refers to any contractor who is working under the direct supervision of the Contractor including but not limited to: electrician, carpenter, painter, and trucking/transport companies.
7. **SITE**: Refers to H.C. Solomon Mental Health Center, 397 Varnum Avenue, Lowell, MA 01854.

B. The terms are provided to facilitate communication but do not supersede the legal definitions provided in the Contract.

1.3 WORK UNDER THIS CONTRACT

A. The work described under this Contract is for the upgrades to the HVAC system located within a 2,700 square foot area of the basement and the main lobby of the SITE. The installation, modernization, and refurbishment shall be in conformity with the *International Building Code (IBC), 2015 Edition,* the *Massachusetts Amendments to the International*

Building Code 2015, Ninth Edition, 780 CMR, National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) 13, 20002 Edition and the *International Fire Code (IFC),* including modifications and any other authorities that have legal jurisdiction over the site including the Federal government.

B. Scope of Work - The general scope of work under the bid includes but is not limited to the following:

1. Application of, paying for, and securing any and all permits required from local, state, fire and federal agencies, and other authorities having jurisdiction over construction on the Site, including submitting, revising, and resubmitting all required plans, permits, and notifications.
2. Preparation and submission of project work plan and schedules. The Plan shall include all requirements necessary to keep all facilities open at all times for safe public access and use.
3. Mobilization to the Site including but not limited to establishment of the Contractor's space, if necessary, within the Building.
4. Establish work area perimeter and dust control measures.
5. Perform required selective demolition, including but not limited to, removal of affected ceiling area, partial existing system located in the main lobby, removal and disposal of materials.
6. Refer to Division 23 for the Heating, Ventilating and Air Conditioning, Sub-section 1.2 Description of Work, for fully definitive scope of work.
7. Refer to Division 26 for all necessary electrical which shall be a part of this scope of work as well.

1.4 CONTRACT INTENT

A. The intent of this project is to install and test a new HVAC system that is incorporated into the existing system. The new system will installed with the coordination of the two general contractors, and independent sprinkler contractor overseeing construction work within the same areas.

B. Intent of these specifications is to cover selected demolition, installation, testing, inspection, and warranty service complete and operable in every respect as well as standby and access for other contractor's completion of their work in proximity to the work specified under this Contract. It is not intended to give every detail in specifications. DMH is not responsible for absence of existing equipment or any detail Contractor may require. The Contractor shall furnish all material and equipment usually provided with such system and/or needed to make a complete and safe operating installation, whether specifically mentioned or not, omitting only such parts as are specific exceptions from the specifications.

C. The HVAC system control equipment will be non-proprietary design and contain materials that will maintain the ease of complete maintenance of all aspects of the system.

1.5 EXISTING CONDITIONS

A. The SITE is a two-story structure with a basement. The building was constructed in 1976 and was originally designed and built without a effective HVAC system within the existing lobby and the basement area was left unfinished. The existing main lobby system shall be demolished as indicated on the Drawings and the basement area is currently unfinished.

1.6 EXAMINATION OF SITE AND DOCUMENTS

A. A mandatory pre-bid conference will be held at the job site on the date and at the time indicated in the Invitation to Bid.

B. Bidders are expected to examine and to be thoroughly familiar with all contract documents and with the conditions under which the work is to be carried out. The Commonwealth will not be responsible for errors, omissions, and/or charges for extra work arising from the Contractors or Subcontractors failure to familiarize themselves with the contract documents, that he is familiar with the conditions and requirements of both where they require, in any part of the work a given result to be produced, that the contract documents are adequate and he will produce the required results.

1.7 CONTRACTOR QUALIFICATIONS

A. The Contractor shall be a Division of Capital Asset Management and Maintenance (DCAMM) certified HVAC system contractor with a current certification.

B. Within three business days from the bid opening, the apparent low bidder shall submit a certification in writing that it has successfully performed at least three recent (within last three years) projects of similar size, scope, and cost. The apparent low bidder shall submit the following information for each project:

1. Project Description
2. Project Value
3. Date was conducted
4. Reference with contact information for the Owner who was the recipient of the work.

C. It is the Bidder's responsibility to obtain the necessary forms from DCAMM and make application to DCAMM not less than three weeks prior to advertised bid opening for DCAMM to evaluate the application and issue a Certificate of Eligibility.

D. The Contractor's Updated Statement is not a public record as defined in M.G.L., Chapter 4, Section 7, and will not be open to public inspection.

1.8 CONTRACT METHOD

A. Work under this Contract shall be lump sum price, for the scopes of work as described in these Specifications.

B. Should additional work be required, the procedures specified in the Contract shall apply.

C. The Massachusetts Standard Labor Wage rates, as included in the Contract exhibits, will be used for base contract work, as well as any change order work.

1.9 SUPERVISION OF THE WORK

A. The Contractor shall be held directly responsible for the correct installation of all work performed under this Contract. The Contractor must make good repair, without expense to the Commonwealth, of any part of the new work, or existing work to remain, which may become inoperative on account of leaving the work unprotected or unsupervised during construction of the system or which may break or give out in any manner by reason of poor workmanship, defective materials or any lack of space to allow for expansion and contraction of the work during the Contractor's warranty period, from the date of final acceptance of the work by DMH.

B. The Contractor shall be responsible for initiating, maintaining and supervising all safety precautions and programs in connection with his direct work.

1. Training certificates to be submitted on assigned employees prior to commencement of any work or services.

1.10 CONTRACTOR'S USE OF THE PREMISES

A. The Contractor can gain access to the premises during the hours specified below. In addition the Contractor and his personnel will limit themselves to only within the Limits of Work during working hours. If work needs to

be scheduled during times other than those listed below, Contractor shall inform the DMH Project Manager one week prior to work and request approval

1. Deliveries: 7:00 am to 8:30 am and after 1:00 pm.
2. General Access: 7:00 am to 4:00 pm.

B. Confine operations at the site to areas permitted by:

1. Laws
2. Ordinances
3. Permits
4. Contract Documents
5. DMH Requirements

C. All on-site workers will be required to wear identifying name badges.

D. The Contractor shall supervise the use of the SITE related to construction and be responsible for correcting any damage identified by DMH to DMH's satisfaction.

E. An existing conditions survey shall be conducted prior to any work being performed with the DMH Project Manager and the DMH Site Director or their representatives.

F. Existing utilities within the interior Limits of Work will be available for use during construction unless indicated otherwise. These utilities would include water, sewer, and electricity. Temporary connections to these utilities, all metering, transformers, removal, usage, and their associated costs will be the responsibility of the Contractor.

G. All apparatus, storage, and the operation of workmen in connection with activities under this Section shall be confined to the Limits of Work as shown on the Drawings. Storage of project-specific equipment and materials will be permitted on the property upon approval of the DMH Project Manager.

H. All parking regulations shall be observed.

I. All vehicles carrying loose, dry material such as demolition debris, refuse, construction debris, etc., shall be covered by tarpaulins to prevent blowing away or spillage of contents. All spillage of whatever nature shall be promptly taken up and removed.

1.11 COORDINATION

A. The Contractor shall be responsible for the proper fitting of all the work and for the coordination of the operations of all trades, subcontractors or material and men engaged upon the work. The Contractor shall do, or cause his agents to do, all cutting, fitting, adjusting, and repair necessary in order to make the several parts of the work come together properly.

1. Examine Contract Documents in advance of start of construction and identify in writing questions, irregularities or interference to the DMH Project Manager in writing. Failure to identify and address such issues in advance becomes the sole responsibility of the Contractor.

B. Execute the work in an orderly and careful manner with due regard to the occupants of the facility, the public, the employees, and the normal function of the facility.

C. The work sequence shall follow planning and schedule established by the Contractor as approved by the DMH Project Manager. The work shall commence promptly and be executed with full simultaneous progress. Work operations which require the interruption of utilities, service, and access shall be scheduled so as to involve minimum disruption and inconvenience, and to be expedited so as to insure minimum duration of any periods of disruption or inconvenience.

D. The Contractor shall review the tolerances established in the specifications for each type of work and as established by trade organizations. The Contractor shall coordinate the various trades and resolve any conflicts that may exist between trade tolerances without additional cost to DMH. The Contractor shall provide any chipping, leveling, shoring or surveys to ensure that the various materials align.

E. The Contractor shall coordinate all work that impacts the fire suppression being installed at the same time and also the alarm system with the general contractors and the Fire Alarm Company of Record including preparation, demolition, modernization, and testing. Costs associated with the Fire Alarm Company that are directly related to this Contract are to be included in the Contract price.

1.12 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. For products specified by association or trade standards, comply with requirements for the standard, except where more rigid requirements are specified or are required by codes. Refer to the specific Specification for specific references.

B. Where reference is made in the Contractual Documents to Publications and Standards issued by Associations or Societies, the intent shall be understood to specify the current edition of such Publications or Standards (including tentative revision) in effect on the date of the contract advertisement notwithstanding any reference to a particular date.

1.13 PRECONSTRUCTION CONFERENCE

A. In accordance with Article V of the CONTRACT AND GENERAL CONDITIONS, a pre-construction conference to review the work will be conducted by the DMH Project Manager.

B. Representatives of the following shall be required to attend this conference:

1. DMH Project Manager
2. DMH Site Director
3. Contractor
4. All Subcontractors

C. The Contractor shall have a responsible representative at the pre-construction conference, as well as representatives of field or office forces and major subcontractors. All such representatives shall have authority to act for their respective firms. The pre-construction conference is to be held within five days of Notice to Proceed, or as otherwise determined by DMH.

1.14 WORK BY DMH

A. DMH will provide Site Access

B. DMH will designate parking and staging areas.

C. DMH will provide access to water, electrical, and sanitary facilities. Note that electrical service in the Building is 110 volt2000A, 120/208 Volt Three Phase4-Wire System. If the Contractor requires additional power, the Contractor is responsible to provide the additional power under the base contract fee.

1.15 SUBCONTRACTORS

A. After selection, the successful Bidder shall submit a list of subcontractors proposed for the performance of the Work to DMH for approval. The list shall include the name, address, contact person, and MA tax identification number for each subcontractor.

1.16 PROJECT MEETINGS

A. Project meetings shall be held on a weekly basis and as required subject to the discretion of the DMH Project Manager.

B. As a prerequisite for monthly payments, ordering schedules, shop drawing schedules, and coordination meeting schedules shall be prepared and maintained by the Contractor and shall be revised and updated on a monthly basis, and a copy shall be submitted to the DMH Project Manager.

C. In order to expedite construction progress on this project, the Contractor shall order all materials immediately after the approval of shop drawings and shall obtain a fixed date of delivery to the project site for all materials ordered which shall not impede or otherwise interfere with construction progress. The Contractor shall present a list and written proof of all materials and equipment ordered (through purchase orders). Such list shall be presented at the meetings and shall be continuously updated.

D. Scheduling shall be discussed with all concerned parties, and methods shall be presented by the Contractor which shall reflect construction completion not being deferred or foreshortened. Identify critical long-lead items and other special scheduling requirements. The project schedule is to include time for submission of shop drawing submittals, time for review, and allowance for resubmittal and review.

E. Project meetings shall be chaired by the DMH Project Manager.

F. Minutes of the project meetings shall be prepared by the DMH Project Manager and shall be distributed to all present within 72 hours of the Project Meeting.

1.17 PERMITS, INSPECTION AND TESTING REQUIRED BY GOVERNING AUTHORITIES

A. If the Contract Documents, laws, ordinances, rules, regulations or orders of any public authority having any jurisdiction require any portion of the Work to be inspected, tested, or approved, the Contractor shall give the DMH Project Manager or his/her designated representative, and such Authority timely notice of its readiness so the DMH Project Manager may observe such inspecting, testing, or approval.

B. Prior to the start of construction, the Contractor shall complete application to the applicable Building Code enforcement authority for a Building Permit. Such Permit shall be displayed in a conspicuous location at the project site.

C. Unless otherwise specified under the Sections of the Specifications, the Contractor shall pay such proper and legal fees to public officers and others as may be necessary for the due and faithful performance of the work and which may arise incidental to the fulfilling of this Contract. As such, all fees, charges and assessments in connection with the above shall be paid by the Contractor.

1.18 CUTTING, CORING, AND PATCHING, UNLESS OTHERWISE INDICATED

A. The Contractor shall do all cutting, coring, fitting and patching of his work that may be required to make its several parts come together properly and fit it to receive or be received by work of the Subcontractors as indicated in the Specifications.

B. The Contractor shall not endanger any work by cutting and coring or otherwise altering the work and shall not cut or alter the work of any other Subcontractor except with the written consent of the DMH Project Manager.

C. Submit a written request to the DMH Project Manager well in advance of executing any cutting or alteration which affects:

1. Work of DMH or separate contractor.
2. Structural value or integrity of any element of the SITE.
3. Integrity or effectiveness of weather-exposed or moisture-resistant elements or systems.
4. Efficiency, operational life, maintenance, or safety of operational elements.
5. Visual qualities of sight-exposed elements.
6. Request shall include:
    a. Identification of the Project.
    b. Description of affected work.
    c. The necessity for cutting, alteration, or excavation.
    d. Effect on work of DMH or any separate contractor, or on structural or weatherproof integrity of SITE.
    e. Description of proposed work:
    f. Alternatives to cutting and patching.
    g. Cost proposal, when applicable.
    h. Written permission of any separate contractor whose work will be affected.
7. Should conditions of Work or the schedule indicate a change of products from original installation, Contractor shall submit request for substitution to the DMH Project Manager.
8. Submit written notice to the DMH Project Manager designating date and time the work will be uncovered a minimum of three

business days in advance.

D. Performance:

1. Execute cutting and patching by methods which will prevent damage to other work, and will provide proper surfaces to receive installation of repairs.
    a. In general, where mechanical cutting is required, cut work with sawing and grinding tools, not with hammering and chopping tools, core drill openings through concrete work.
    b. Prior to cutting and structural steel or concrete work, contact the DMH Project Manager in writing. Do not cut any structural steel and concrete work until approval has been granted by the DMH Project Manager.
2. Execute fitting and adjustment of products to provide a finished installation to comply with specified products, functions, tolerances, and finishes.
3. Restore work which has been cut or removed; install new products to provide completed Work in accordance with requirements of Contract Documents.
4. Fit work airtight to pipes, sleeves, ducts, conduit, and other penetrations through surfaces.
5. Patch with seams which are durable and as invisible as possible. Comply with specified tolerances for the work.
6. Restore exposed finishes of patched areas; and, where necessary extend finish restoration onto retained work adjoining, in a manner which will eliminate evidence of patching.
    a. Where patch occurs in a smooth painted surface, extend final paint coat over the entire unbroken surface containing the patch.
7. Refinish entire surfaces as necessary to provide an even finish to match adjacent finishes:
    a. For continuous surfaces, refinish to nearest intersection.
    b. For an assembly, refinish entire unit.

E. Existing Utilities Services:

1. Interruptions to critical existing utility services will not be allowed.
2. The Contractor shall locate and record on Drawings all existing utilities along the course of the work by such means as the DMH Project Manager may approve, and shall preserve such marked locations until the work has progressed to the point where the encountered utility is fully exposed and protected as required. It shall be the Contractor's responsibility to notify the proper authorities and/or utility company before interfering therewith.

3. All exposed conduits, wires, and/or cables shall be provided with sufficient protection and support to prevent failure, fraying, or damage due to backfilling or other construction operations.

4. The Contractor shall not obstruct access to existing active utility system manholes and catch basins which continue to serve facilities other than the project construction site. The Contractor shall exercise measures as necessary to prevent the placement of impediments that limit continuous access by authorized utility company or DMH maintenance personnel and shall be required to reimburse the utility company or DMH for any expense incurred as a result of need to remove any such impediments to access.

1.19 SECURITY REQUIREMENTS

A. The Contractor shall familiarize himself with DMH's security requirements and shall abide by and conform to such established regulations at all times. The Contractor shall submit a list of on-site personnel. List shall be kept current by Contractor and a copy kept on-site.

B. Proper identification must be worn at all times.

1.20 SAFETY REQUIREMENTS

A. OSHA Safety and Health Course Documentation Records: Chapter 306 of the Massachusetts Acts of 2004 requires that everyone employed at the jobsite must complete a minimum 10-hour long course in construction safety and health approved by the U.S. Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) prior to working at the jobsite. Compliance is required for the Contractor's and subcontractors' on-site employees at all levels. This requirement does not apply to home-office employees visiting the Site or to suppliers' employees who are making deliveries.

B. Documentation records shall be initially complied by the Contractor and subcontractors as part of certified payrolls, and the Contractor shall create and maintain a copy of the documentation on-site at all times.

C. The SITE will be occupied during execution of work. Work shall be conducted in a manner to afford maximum protection of building, facilities, employees and the public and to prevent unreasonable delay or interference with normal functioning of the building.

D. Provide fire extinguishers so that they shall be readily available at all times.

E. All accident reports are to be transmitted to the DMH Project Manager within 24 hours of occurrences.

1.21 SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION

A. Substantial Completion shall be considered to be when the HVAC system has been inspected and a Certificate of Use has been issued by the State Building Inspector, along with any additional inspections required by applicable codes and provided to the DMH Project Manager.

****** END OF SECTION ******

SECTION 013300
SUBMITTALS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 PROVISIONS INCLUDED

A. Attention is directed to the CONTRACT and GENERAL CONDITIONS and all Sections within DIVISION 1 – GENERAL REQUIREMENTS which are hereby made a part of this Section of the specification.

1.2 SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA AND SAMPLES

A. The Contractor shall review and submit to the DMH Project Manager, shop drawings and product data required by Specification Section.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Original drawings shall be prepared by Contractor, Subcontractor, supplier or distributors, which illustrate some portion of the work; show fabrication, layout, setting or erection details.

    a. Shop drawings shall be prepared by a qualified detailer.
    b. Details shall be identified by reference to sheet and detail number shown.
    c. Maximum sheet size shall be 30 inch by 42 inch.
    d. Reproductions for submittals shall be reproducible with the required number of opaque prints specified herein.

C. Project Data:

1. Manufacturer’s standard schematic drawings:

    a. Modify drawings to delete information which is not applicable to project.
    b. Supplement standard information to provide additional information applicable to project.

2. Manufacturer’s catalog sheets, brochures, diagrams, schedules, performance charts, illustrations and other standard descriptive data:

    a. Clearly mark each copy to identify pertinent materials, products or models.
    b. Show dimensions and clearances required.
    c. Show performance characteristics and capacities.

1.3 CONTRACTORS RESPONSIBILITIES

A. The Contractor shall coordinate each submittal with requirements of work and contract documents.

B. The Contractor's responsibility for errors and omissions in submittals is not relieved by DMH Project Manager's review of submittals.

C. Notify DMH Project Manager in writing at time of submission, of deviations in submittals from requirements of contract documents or previous submissions.

D. Work that requires submittals shall not commence unless submittals have DMH Project Manager's stamp and initials or signature indicating review and approval.

E. After DMH Project Manager's review, the Contractor shall distribute required copies.

1.4 SUBMISSION REQUIREMENTS:

A. Make submittals promptly and in such sequence as to cause no delay in the work.

B. Submit four (4) opaque copies of shop drawings, and number of copies of product data which the Contractor requires for distribution, plus two (2) copies which will be retained by the DMH Project Manager.

C. Submit number of samples specified in each Specification Section.

D. Forward submittals with transmittal letter.

E. Submittals shall include:

1. Date and revision date.
2. Project title.
3. The names of:
    a. Contractor
    b. Subcontractor
    c. Supplier
    d. Manufacturer
4. Identification of product or material.
5. Relation to adjacent structure of materials.
6. Field dimensions, clearly defined as such.
7. Specification Section number.
8. Applicable standards, such as ASTM number.

9. A blank space 5 inches by 4 inch, for the DMH Project Manager's stamp.
10. Identification of deviations from contract document.
11. Contractors stamp, initialized or signed, certifying review and approval of submittals.

1.5 RESUBMISSION REQUIREMENTS

A. Shop Drawings:

1. Drawings shall be designated approved, approved as noted, revise and resubmit or rejected.
2. Revise drawings as required and resubmit as specified for previous submittal.
3. Product Data: Submit new data as required from previous submittals.

1.6 DISTRIBUTION OF SUBMITTALS AFTER REVIEW

A. Distribute copies of shop drawings and project data which display the DMH Project Manager's written approval to appropriate Subcontractors.

1.7 SCHEDULE OF VALUES

A. Prior to the first request for payment, the Contractor shall submit to the DMH Project Manager, a draft Schedule of Values of the various portions of the work in sufficient detail to reflect various major components of each trade, including quantities when requested, aggregating the total contract sum, and divided so as to facilitate payments for work under each Section.

B. The draft Schedule of Values shall be prepared in such form as specified or as DMH may approve and it shall include data to substantiate its accuracy.

C. Each item in the Schedule of Values shall include its proper share of overhead and profit. This Schedule including breakdown and values requires the approval of DMH and shall be used only as a basis for the Contractor's request for payment.

****** END OF SECTION ******

SECTION 015000
TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

A. Attention is directed to the CONTRACT and GENERAL CONDITIONS and all Sections within DIVISION 1 – GENERAL REQUIREMENTS which are hereby made a part of this Section of the Specifications.

1.2 DESCRIPTION

A. The Contractor shall be responsible for providing and maintaining temporary construction facilities and controls as specified herein.

1.3 HOISTING EQUIPMENT AND MACHINERY

A. All hoisting equipment and machinery required for the proper and expeditious prosecution and progress of the work shall be furnished, installed, operated and maintained in safe condition by the Contractor for the use of all Subcontractor's material and/or equipment delivered to the designated hoisting area except that which is specifically required to be provided by the Subcontractors themselves and is so stated in each appropriately related Section of the Specifications. All costs for hoisting operating services shall be borne by the Contractor.

1.4 STAGING AND TEMPORARY LADDERS, RAMPS, RUNWAYS, ETC.

A. All staging, exterior and interior, required to be over eight feet in height, shall be furnished and erected by the Contractor and maintained in safe condition by him without change to, and for the use of all trades as needed by them for proper execution of their work.

1.5 DUST CONTROL

A. The Contractor shall provide adequate means for the purpose of preventing dust caused by construction operations throughout the period of the construction contract.

B. This provision does not supersede any specific requirements for methods of construction or applicable general conditions set forth in the contract articles with added regard to performance obligations of the Contractor.

C. The Contractor shall provide and maintain floor mats at access points to prevent the tracking of dust.

1.6 NOISE CONTROL

A. Develop and maintain a noise-abatement program and enforce strict discipline over all personnel to keep noise to a minimum.

B. Execute construction work by methods and by use of equipment which will reduce excess noise.

1. Equip air compressors with silencers and power equipment with mufflers.

1.7 CLEANING DURING CONSTRUCTION

A. The Contractor shall perform clean-up operations during construction as herein specified.

B. The Contractor shall at all times during the progress of the work, keep the work area and other adjacent areas from accumulation of waste materials or rubbish.

C. Cleaning and removal of waste material and/or rubbish must be performed on a daily basis.

D. Control accumulation of waste materials and rubbish, periodically dispose of off-site. The Contractor shall bear all costs, including fees resulting from such disposal.

E. Store volatile wastes in covered metal containers, and remove from premises.

F. Prevent accumulation of wastes which create hazardous conditions.

G. Provide adequate ventilation during use of volatile or noxious substances.

H. Conduct cleaning and disposal operation to comply with local ordinances and anti-pollution laws.

1. Do not burn rubbish and waste materials on site.
2. Do not dispose of volatile wastes such as mineral spirits, oil, or paint thinner in storm or sanitary drains.

I. Use only those materials which will not create hazards to health or property and which will not damage surfaces.

J. Use only those cleaning materials and methods recommended by manufacturer of surface materials to be cleaned.

K. Provide on-site containers for collection of waste materials, debris and rubbish.

L. Remove waste materials, debris and rubbish from the site periodically and dispose of at legal disposal areas off the construction site.

****** END OF SECTION ******

SECTION 016000
PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

A. Attention is directed to the CONTRACT and GENERAL CONDITIONS and all Sections within DIVISION 1 – GENERAL REQUIREMENTS which are hereby made a part of this Section of the Specifications.

1.2 PRODUCTS

A. Products include material, equipment and systems. Products shall be new, best of their respective kinds and free from defects.

B. Comply with Specifications and referenced standards as a minimum requirement.

C. Components required to be supplied in quantity within a Specification Section shall be the same, and shall be interchangeable.

D. Do not use materials and equipment removed from existing structures, except as specifically required, or allowed, by the contract documents.

E. Materials and equipment of similar application: same manufacturer, except as noted.

F. Secure approval of materials, equipment and installation

1.3 WORKMANSHIP

A. Comply with industry standards except when more restrictive tolerances or specified requirements indicate more rigid standards or more precise workmanship.

B. Perform work by persons qualified to produce workmanship of specified quality.

C. Secure products in place with positive anchorage devices designed and sized to withstand stresses, vibration and racking.

1.4 MANUFACTURER'S INSTRUCTIONS

A. When work is specified to comply with manufacturer's instructions, submit copies as specified in Section 013300 - SUBMITTALS.

B. Perform work in accordance with details of instructions and specified requirements.

1.5 TRANSPORTATION AND HANDLING

A. Refer to CONTRACT and GENERAL CONDITIONS and Specification Sections for requirements pertaining to transportation and handling of materials and equipment.

B. Transport products by methods to avoid product damage; deliver in undamaged condition in manufacturer's unopened containers or packaging, dry.

C. Provide equipment and personnel to handle products by methods to prevent soiling or damage.

D. Promptly inspect shipments to assure that products comply with requirements, that quantities are correct and products are undamaged.

1.6 STORAGE AND PROTECTION

A. Refer to CONTRACT and GENERAL CONDITIONS and Specification Sections for requirements pertaining to storage and protection of materials and equipment.

B. Store products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, with seals and labels intact and legible. Store sensitive products in weather-tight enclosures; maintain within temperature and humidity ranges required by manufacturer's instructions.

C. For exterior storage of fabricated products, place on sloped supports above ground. Cover products subject to deterioration with impervious sheet covering; provide ventilation to avoid condensation.

D. Arrange storage to provide access for inspection. Periodically inspect to assure that products are undamaged, and are maintained under required conditions.

****** END OF SECTION ******

SECTION 017000
CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

A. Attention is directed to the CONTRACT and GENERAL CONDITIONS and all Sections within DIVISION 1 – GENERAL REQUIREMENTS which are hereby made a part of this Section of the Specifications.

1.2 FINAL CLEANING

A. Upon completion of the work under this Contract, the Contractor shall leave the SITE ready for use without the need for further cleaning or directly related painting of any kind and with all work in perfect order. The Contractor shall perform final cleaning operations as herein specified prior to final inspection.

B. At completion of work, remove waste materials, rubbish, tools, equipment, machinery and surplus materials, and clean all sight-exposed surfaces; leave project clean and ready for occupancy.

C. Cleaning shall include all surfaces, interior and exterior in which the Contractor has had access whether existing or new.

D. Use only those materials which will not create hazards to health or property and which will not damage surfaces.

E. Use only those cleaning materials and methods that are recommended by the manufacturer of surface material to be cleaned.

F. Employ experienced workmen or professional cleaners for final cleaning operations.

G. Remove grease, mastic, adhesives, dust, dirt, stains, labels, fingerprints, and other foreign materials from sight-exposed interior and exterior surfaces.

H. Repair, patch and touch up marred surfaces to specified finish, to match adjacent surfaces.

I. In addition, the Contractor shall remove from the SITE , all building rubbish, unused materials belonging to him or used under his direction during construction or impairing the use or appearance of the property and

shall restore such areas affected by the work to their original condition, unless other provisions for completion have been specified.

J. Prior to final completion or DMH Use and Occupancy, the Contractor shall conduct an inspection of sight-exposed interior and exterior surfaces, and all work areas, to verify that the entire work is clean.

1.3 PROJECT DOCUMENTS

A. Maintenance Data: Obtain at time of purchase of equipment, there copies of operation, lubrication and maintenance manuals of all items. Assemble literature in coordinated manuals with additional information describing combined operation of field assembled units, including as built wiring diagrams. Manual shall contain names and addresses of manufacturers and local representatives who stock or furnish repair parts for items or equipment. Divide manuals into three sections or books as follows:

1. Directions for and sequence of operation of each item of HVAC system, e.g. air handling units and boilers. Sequence shall list valves, switches, and other devices used to start, stop and control system. Detail procedure to be followed in case of malfunctions. Include detailed approved flow diagrams of temperature control heating, heating, condensate, chilled water, condenser water, etc., as appropriate for systems provided. Include approved valve directory showing each valve number, location of each valve, and equipment or fixture controlled by valve.
2. Detailed maintenance and troubleshooting manuals containing data furnished by manufacturer for complete maintenance. Include copy of balancing report.
3. Lubrication instructions detailing type of lubricant, amount, and intervals recommended by manufacturer for each item of equipment. Include additional instructions necessary for implementation of first class lubrication program. Include approved summary of lubrication instructions in chart form, where appropriate.

B. As-Built Drawings: Showing all field changes from original Working Plans. Submit full-size hard copy and electronic AutoCAD files on compact disk. Coordinate AutoCAD version with DMH at time of submittal.

C. Valve Chart: Provide a drawing on 11-inch x 17-inch paper identifying the location of the control valves for the HVAC system shown on the floor plans of the building. This valve chart shall be framed and permanently installed in a location requested by the Facility Manager.

1.4 GUARANTEES AND WARRANTIES

A. The Contractor shall submit to the DMH Project Manager all extended guarantees and warranties that have been specified in various, individual Sections of the Specifications.

B. The Contractor shall guarantee to DMH all work installed to be free from any and all defects in workmanship and/or materials and that all apparatus will develop capacities and characteristics specified and that if, during a period of one year from date of certificate of completion and acceptance of work, unless a longer period is specified, any such defects in workmanship, material or performance appear, he will remedy them without cost to DMH.

C. Should Contractor fail to remedy such defects within the agreed length of time, to be specified in notice from DMH, then DMH may have such work performed by another contractor and charge the entire cost to the Contractor.

****** END OF SECTION ******

SECTION 024119
SELECTIVE DEMOLITION

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

A. Attention is directed to the CONTRACT and GENERAL CONDITIONS and all Sections within DIVISION 1 – GENERAL REQUIREMENTS which are hereby made a part of this Section of the Specifications.

B. Equality of material, article, assembly or system other than those named or described in this Section shall be determined in accordance with the provisions of the CONTRACT and GENERAL CONDITIONS.

1.2 DESCRIPTION

A. The work includes the removal of any existing HVAC equipment remaining in the areas being renovated that has remained as integral items to maintain temperature control after general demolition has been completed within the renovation areas.

B. It is not the intent herein to describe all the items and work required to be removed under this Section. The Contractor shall assure himself that all of the work to be removed, not otherwise specified herein or described under other Sections shall be removed under this Section at no additional cost to the Commonwealth.

C. The Contractor shall also examine other Sections of these Specifications and familiarize himself with their provisions regarding the removal of existing items and work. He shall understand that all items and work not specifically mentioned to be removed by the requirements of other Sections of these Specifications shall be removed as part of the work under this Section.

D. The scope of work consists of material and services to be furnished under this Section, and without limiting the generality thereof, includes labor, equipment and services required for the removal of existing work, special protection and all work incidental thereto as specified herein and as shown on the Drawings.

1.3 RELATED WORK

A. The following work is not included in this Section and is to be performed under the contracted scope of work:

1. Movable items and items of DMH's equipment in the areas of the existing building affected by the work under this Contract will be removed by DMH.

2. Cutting and core drilling for any possible new HVAC work will be performed by these respective trades.

3. The patching and repair of ceilings, floors and walls caused by work performed under this scope of work is to be included under these Specifications describing similar construction. The Contractor shall do his utmost to keep such necessary patching and repairing to a minimum.

4. Disconnecting of existing services, as required, will be done by a licensed subcontractor.

1.4 SCHEDULING

A. Before beginning demolition activities, the Contractor shall consult jointly with the DMH Site Director, DMH Project Manager, the two general contractors and the fire suppression contractor to determine the schedule of work, exact places, times and days during which the demolition work may, or may not be carried on, and to determine further reasonable requirements, particularly in regards to noise prevention, dust prevention, weather protection, and safety precautions.

B. No work shall be started without prior approval of the Facility. The Contractor shall give the DMH Site Director adequate advance notice of his readiness to start such work in order that they may properly rearrange activities or evacuate the spaces to be affected.

1.5 EXAMINATION OF PREMISES

A. The Contractor will be held to have examined the premises before submitting proposals for the work and to have satisfied himself as to the existing conditions under which he will be obliged to operate or that will in any way affect the work.

B. The Contractor is responsible to determine the character and amount of materials and debris to be removed. No allowances will be made in this connection for error or negligence of the Contractor.

1.6 ENCLOSURES

A. Provide temporary partitions as required to separate work areas from DMH's occupied areas, to prevent penetration of dust and moisture into

occupied areas, to prevent damage to existing areas and equipment. Construction shall be framing and sheet materials with closed joints and sealed edges at intersections with existing surfaces.

B. Provide plastic sheet material and tape to seal any remaining HVAC supplies and exhaust. Insure that dust does not enter the ductwork.

1.7 PROTECTION

A. The removal of the designated HVAC system shall be done with utmost care, using tools and methods that will not transfer any heavy shocks to the remaining portions of the existing building. All possible care shall be taken to avoid vibration and other disturbances.

B. When removing materials and making openings in walls, floors, etc., the Contractor shall take all precautions and use whatever protective devices, shoring, guardrails, and the like as may be required to assure that the remaining and adjacent portions of the existing work which is to remain is substantially supported and/or not loaded beyond safe limits.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

A. Procurement and installation of ceiling tiles is not the responsibility of the Contractor.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Before starting the removal of work, the Contractor shall arrange for the disconnection of active utility services in the areas where construction work is to take place unless it has already been disabled by others. All work on existing utilities shall be accomplished by the respective subcontractor or utility companies having jurisdiction.

3.2 REMOVAL OF EXISTING WORK

A. Removal of the designated existing HVAC system.

B. Removal and disposal of existing acoustical or hard ceilings which interfere with the installation of the new HVAC system.

C. Provide dust protection to contain dust and debris to the work area.

D. Disconnect utilities as required.

3.3 CLEAN-UP

A. At the completion of work, all rubbish, debris, waste, materials, and salvaged materials shall be removed from the site. All tools, scaffolds, apparatus and appliances used in connection with work under this Section shall be removed by the Contractor, and the premises shall be left in clean condition, ready for the alteration work as described under other Sections of these Specifications.

3.4 DISPOSAL OF WORK REMOVED

A. All refuse and debris which accumulates as a result of work under this Section shall be removed. No refuse or debris of any nature shall be allowed to accumulate to the detriment of the work.

B. Remove debris in covered containers on a route designated by the DMH Project Manager.

****** END OF SECTION******

SECTION 230513
COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on ac power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

1.3 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:

1. Motor controllers.
2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.

B. Comply with IEEE 841 for severe-duty motors.

2.2 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS

A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg. C and at altitude of 3300 feet above sea level.

B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

2.3 POLYPHASE MOTORS

A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.

B. See "Energy Considerations" Article in the Evaluations for discussion of motor efficiencies.

C. Efficiency: Energy efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.

D. Service Factor: 1.15.

E. Multispeed Motors: Variable torque.

1. For motors with 2:1 speed ratio, consequent pole, single winding.
2. For motors with other than 2:1 speed ratio, separate winding for each speed.

F. Multispeed Motors: Separate winding for each speed.

G. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.

H. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.

I. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.

J. Insulation: Class F.

K. Code Letter Designation:

1. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
2. Motors Smaller than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.

L. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than 324T.

2.4 POLYPHASE MOTORS WITH ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.

B. Motors Used with Variable Frequency Controllers: Ratings, characteristics, and features coordinated with and approved by controller manufacturer.

1. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width modulated inverters.
2. Energy- and Premium-Efficient Motors: Class B temperature rise; Class F insulation.
3. Inverter-Duty Motors: Class F temperature rise; Class H insulation.
4. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.

C. Severe-Duty Motors: Comply with IEEE 841, with 1.15 minimum service factor.

2.5 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:

1. Permanent-split capacitor.
2. Split phase.
3. Capacitor start, inductor run.
4. Capacitor start, capacitor run.

B. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.

C. Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.

D. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.

E. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

******END OF SECTION******

SECTION 230523
GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. Related Specifications
Section 230553 – IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Angle valves.
2. Globe valves.
3. Ball valves.
4. Butterfly valves.
5. Check valves.
6. Gate valves.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. CWP: Cold working pressure.

B. EPDM: Ethylene propylene copolymer rubber.

C. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene, Buna-N, or nitrile rubber.

D. SWP: Steam working pressure.

E. NRS: Non-rising stem.

F. OS&Y: Outside screw and yoke.

G. RS: Rising stem.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of valve.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:

1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
2. Protect threads, flange faces, grooves, and weld ends.
3. Set angle and globe valves closed to prevent rattling.
4. Set ball valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.
5. Set butterfly valves closed or slightly open.
6. Block check valves in either closed or open position.
7. Set gate valves closed to prevent rattling.
8. Set plug valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.

B. Use the following precautions during storage:

1. Maintain valve end protection.
2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher-than-ambient dew point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.

C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use hand wheels, operating handles or stems as lifting or rigging points.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.

B. Refer to HVAC valve schedule articles for applications of valves.

C. Valve Pressure and Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.

D. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.

E. Valve Actuator Types:

1. Gear Actuator: For quarter-turn valves NPS 8 and larger.
2. Handwheel: For valves other than quarter-turn types.
3. Handlever: For quarter-turn valves.
4. Chainwheel: Device for attachment to valve handwheel, stem, or other actuator; of size and with chain for mounting height, as indicated in the "Valve Installation" Article.

F. Valves in Insulated Piping: With 2-inch stem extensions and the following features:

1. Ball Valves: With extended operating handle of non-thermal-conductive material, and protective sleeve that allows operation of valve without breaking the vapor seal or disturbing insulation.
2. Butterfly Valves: With extended neck.

G. Valve-End Connections

1. Flanged: With flanges according to ASME B16.1 for iron valves.
2. Grooved: With grooves according to AWWA C606.
3. Solder Joint: With sockets according to ASME B16.18.
4. Threaded: With threads according to ASME B1.20.1.
5. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

2.2 BRONZE ANGLE VALVES

A. Bronze Angle Valves, Class 150:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. American Valve, Inc.
   b. Apollo Valves.
   c. Stockham; Crane Energy Flow Solutions.
   d. Or Equal.
2. Description:
   a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
   b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
   c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
   d. Ends: Threaded.
   e. Stem and Disc: Bronze.
   f. Packing: Asbestos free.
   g. Handwheel: Malleable iron.

2.3 BRONZE BALL VALVES

A. Bronze Ball Valves, Two-Piece with Full Port and Stainless-Steel Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. American Valve, Inc.
   b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
   c. Hammond Valve.

d. Milwaukee Valve Company.

2. Description:
   a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
   b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
   c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
   d. Body Design: Two piece.
   e. Body Material: Bronze.
   f. Ends: Threaded.
   g. Seats: PTFE.
   h. Stem: Stainless steel.
   i. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
   j. Port: Full.

2.4 IRON, SINGLE-FLANGE BUTTERFLY VALVES

A. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with Ductile-Iron Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. American Valve, Inc.
   b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
   c. Hammond Valve.
   d. Milwaukee Valve Company.
2. Description:
   a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
   b. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
   c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
   d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
   e. Seat: EPDM.
   f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
   g. Disc: Nickel-plated or -coated ductile iron.

2.5 DUCTILE-IRON, GROOVED-END BUTTERFLY VALVES

A. Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves, 175 CWP:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Apollo-Shurjont Piping Products USA Inc.
   b. Grinnell Mechanical Products.
   c. Kennedy Valve Company; a division of McWane, Inc.
   d. Tyco Fire Products LP.
   e. Victaulic Company.
2. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
b. CWP Rating: 175 psig.
c. Body Material: Coated, ductile iron.
d. Stem: Two-piece stainless steel.
e. Disc: Coated, ductile iron.
f. Seal: EPDM.

2.6 BRONZE LIFT CHECK VALVES

A. Bronze Lift Check Valves with Bronze Disc, Class 125:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
   b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
   c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
2. Description:
   a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
   b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
   c. Body Design: Vertical flow.
   d. Body Material: ASTM B 61 or ASTM B 62, bronze.
   e. Ends: Threaded.
   f. Disc: Bronze.

2.7 BRONZE SWING CHECK VALVES

A. Bronze Swing Check Valves with Bronze Disc, Class 150:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. American Valve, Inc.
   b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
   c. Hammond Valve.
   d. Milwaukee Valve Company.
   e. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:
   a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 3.
   b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
   c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
   d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
   e. Ends: Threaded.
   f. Disc: Bronze.

2.8 IRON SWING CHECK VALVES

A. Iron Swing Check Valves with Metal Seats, Class 125:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Crane; Crane Energy Flow Solutions.
   b. Jenkins Valves; Crane Energy Flow Solutions.
   c. Milwaukee Valve Company.
   d. NIBCO INC.
2. Description:
   a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
   b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 200 psig.
   c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 150 psig.
   d. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
   e. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
   f. Ends: Flanged.
   g. Trim: Bronze.
   h. Gasket: Asbestos free.

2.9 IRON, GROOVED-END SWING CHECK VALVES

A. Iron, Grooved-End Swing Check Valves, 300 CWP:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Apollo-Shurjoint Piping Products USA Inc.
   b. Emerson Commercial & Residential Solutions; Emerson Electric Co.
   c. Grinnell Mechanical Products.
   d. Victaulic Company.
2. Description:
   a. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
   b. Body Material: ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
   c. Seal: EPDM.
   d. Disc: Spring operated, ductile iron or stainless steel.
   e. Handwheel: Malleable iron.

2.10 IRON GLOBE VALVES

A. Iron Globe Valves, Class 125:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Crane; Crane Energy Flow Solutions.
   b. Milwaukee Valve Company.

c. NIBCO INC.

2. Description:
   a. Standard: MSS SP-85, Type I.
   b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
   c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
   d. Ends: Flanged.
   e. Trim: Bronze.
   f. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.
   g. Operator: Handwheel or chainwheel.

2.11 BRONZE GATE VALVES

A. Bronze Gate Valves, RS, Class 150:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Hammond Valve.
   b. Kitz Corporation.
   c. Milwaukee Valve Company.
   d. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:
   a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
   b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
   c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
   d. Ends: Threaded.
   e. Stem: Bronze.
   f. Disc: Solid wedge; bronze.
   g. Packing: Asbestos free.
   h. Handwheel: Malleable iron.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.

B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.

C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.

D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.

E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION

A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.

B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.

C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.

D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.

E. Install chainwheels on operators for globe valves NPS 4 and larger and more than 96 inches above floor. Extend chains to 60 inches above finished floor.

F. Install check valves for proper direction of flow and as follows:

1. Swing Check Valves: In horizontal position with hinge pin level.
2. Lift Check Valves: With stem, upright and plumb.

G. Install valve tags. Comply with requirements in Section 230553 IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT for valve tags and schedules.

3.3 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

3.4 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

A. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:

1. Shutoff Service: Ball, butterfly valves.
2. Butterfly Valve Dead-End Service: Single-flange (lug) type.
3. Throttling Service except Steam: Globe valves.

4. Pump-Discharge Check Valves:
   a. NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze swing check valves with bronze or nonmetallic disc.
   b. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Iron swing check valves with lever and weight or with spring or iron, center-guided, metal-seat check valves.

B. If valves with specified CWP ratings are unavailable, the same types of valves with higher CWP ratings may be substituted.

C. Select valves, except wafer types, with the following end connections:

1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules.
2. For Steel Piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedule.
3. For steel Piping, NPS 5 and Larger: Flange ends.
4. For Grooved-End Steep Piping: Valve ends may be grooved.

3.5 HEATING-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:

1. Bronze Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
2. Ball Valves: Two piece, full port, bronze with stainless-steel trim.
3. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 125, bronze disc.
4. Bronze Gate Valves: Class 150, NRS.
5. Bronze Globe Valves: Class 150, bronze disc.

B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:

1. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves: Ductile-iron disc, 200 CWP, and EPDM seat.
2. Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves: 175 CWP.
3. Iron, Grooved-End Check Valves, 300 CWP.
4. Iron Swing Check Valves with metal seas, Class 125.
5. Iron Globe Valves: Class 125.

******END OF SECTION******

SECTION 230529
HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. Related Sections:

Section 230548 – VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR HVAC
Section 232113 – HYDRONIC PIPING
Section 233110 – DUCTWORK AND ACCESSORIES

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
3. Fiberglass pipe hangers.
4. Metal framing systems.
5. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
6. Fastener systems.
7. Pipe stands.
8. Equipment supports.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. MSS: Manufacturers Standardization Society of The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design: Design trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

B. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for HVAC piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.

1. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.
3. Design seismic-restraint hangers and supports for piping and equipment.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following; include Product Data for components:

1. Trapeze pipe hangers.
2. Metal framing systems.
3. Pipe stands.
4. Equipment supports.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For trapeze hangers indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1. Detail fabrication and assembly of trapeze hangers.
2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for designing trapeze hangers.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Welding certificates.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Structural Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot dipped.
3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.
4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.

B. Copper Pipe Hangers:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-coated-steel, factory-fabricated components.
2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of copper-coated steel.

2.2 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

A. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural carbon-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

2.3 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS

A. MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. B-line, an Eaton business.
   b. Flex-Strut Inc.
   c. MIRO Industries.
   d. Thomas & Betts Corporation; A Member of the ABB Group.
   e. Unistrut; Part of Atkore International.
2. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
3. Standard: MFMA-4.
4. Channels: Continuous slotted steel channel with inturned lips.
5. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped steel nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
6. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
7. Metallic Coating: Hot-dipped galvanized.

B. Non-MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Carpenter & Paterson, Inc.
   b. Empire Industries, Inc.
   c. ERICO International Corporation.
   d. Gripple Inc.
2. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made of steel channels, accessories, fittings, and other components for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
3. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4.
4. Channels: Continuous slotted steel channel with inturned lips.
5. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped steel nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
6. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
7. Coating: Zinc.

2.4 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Carpenter & Paterson, Inc.
2. ERICO International Corporation.
3. National Pipe Hanger Corporation.
4. Pipe Shields Inc.
5. Piping Technology & Products, Inc.

B. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: Water-repellent treated, ASTM C 533, Type I calcium silicate with 100-psig minimum compressive strength.

C. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.

D. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.

D. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

2.5 FASTENER SYSTEMS

A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated steel anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

2.6 PIPE STANDS

A. General Requirements for Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated assemblies made of manufactured corrosion-resistant components to support roof-mounted piping.

B. Compact Pipe Stand: One-piece plastic unit with integral-rod roller, pipe clamps, or V-shaped cradle to support pipe, for roof installation without membrane penetration.

C. Low-Type, Single-Pipe Stand: One-piece stainless-steel base unit with plastic roller, for roof installation without membrane penetration.

D. High-Type, Single-Pipe Stand:

1. Description: Assembly of base, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe support, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
2. Base: Stainless steel.
3. Vertical Members: Two or more cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel, continuous-thread rods.
4. Horizontal Member: Cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel rod with plastic or stainless-steel, roller-type pipe support.

E. High-Type, Multiple-Pipe Stand:

1. Description: Assembly of bases, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe supports, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
2. Bases: One or more; plastic.
3. Vertical Members: Two or more protective-coated-steel channels.
4. Horizontal Member: Protective-coated-steel channel.
5. Pipe Supports: Galvanized-steel, clevis-type pipe hangers.

F. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe supports made from structural-steel shapes, continuous-thread rods, and rollers, for mounting on permanent stationary roof curb.

2.7 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural carbon-steel shapes.

2.8 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.

1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.

B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.

1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

C. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled metal framing systems.

D. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.

E. Fastener System Installation:

1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.

F. Pipe Stand Installation:

1. Pipe Stand Types except Curb-Mounted Type: Assemble components and mount on smooth roof surface. Do not penetrate roof membrane.
2. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Assemble components or fabricate pipe stand and mount on permanent, stationary roof curb. See Section 077200 – ROOF ACCESSORIES for curbs.

G. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.

H. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.

I. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.

J. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.

K. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.

L. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.

M. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.

N. Insulated Piping:

1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
   a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
   b. Piping Operating Below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
   c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
   a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
   a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
   a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048-inch thick.
   b. NPS 4: 12 inches long and 0.06-inch thick.
   c. NPS 5 and NPS 6: 18 inches long and 0.06-inch thick.
   d. NPS 8 to NPS 14: 24 inches long and 0.075-inch thick.
   e. NPS 16 to NPS 24: 24 inches long and 0.105-inch thick.
5. Pipes NPS 8 and Larger: Include wood or reinforced calcium-silicate-insulation inserts of length at least as long as protective shield.
6. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

3.2 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.

B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.

C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

3.3 METAL FABRICATIONS

A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.

B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.

C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
   1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
   2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
   3. Remove welding flux immediately.
   4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.

B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2-inches.

3.5 PAINTING

A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.

   1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.

B. Touchup: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal are specified inSection 09 91 23 – INTERIOR PAINTING.

C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.

B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.

D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.

E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports metal trapeze pipe hangers and metal framing systems and attachments for general service applications.

F. Use stainless-steel pipe hangers and stainless-steel attachments for hostile environment applications.

G. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper attachments for copper piping and tubing.

H. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.

I. Use thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.

J. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of up to 1050 deg. F, pipes NPS 4 to NPS 24, requiring up to 4 inches of insulation.
3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 36, requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches of insulation.
4. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 24 if little or no insulation is required.
5. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 4, to allow off-center closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.
6. Adjustable, Swivel Split- or Solid-Ring Hangers (MSS Type 6): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 8.
7. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.

8. Adjustable Band Hangers (MSS Type 9): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
9. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
10. Split Pipe Ring with or without Turnbuckle Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 8.
11. Extension Hinged or Two-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 3.
12. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
13. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.
14. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
15. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
16. Adjustable Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36 if vertical adjustment is required, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
17. Single-Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes NPS 1 to NPS 30, from two rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
18. Adjustable Roller Hangers (MSS Type 43): For suspension of pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 24, from single rod if horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
19. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 42 if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is not necessary.
20. Pipe Roll and Plate Units (MSS Type 45): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 24 if small horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur and vertical adjustment is not necessary.
21. Adjustable Pipe Roll and Base Units (MSS Type 46): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 30 if vertical and lateral adjustment during installation might be required in addition to expansion and contraction.

K. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24.
2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 if longer ends are required for riser clamps.

L. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg. F piping installations.
3. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11, split pipe rings.
4. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
5. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg. F piping installations.

M. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joist construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
7. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
8. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
9. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
10. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
11. Malleable-Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.

12. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
    a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
    b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
    c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.
13. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
14. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
15. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.

N. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.

O. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Restraint-Control Devices (MSS Type 47): Where indicated to control piping movement.
2. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4-inches.
3. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41, roll hanger with springs.
4. Spring Sway Braces (MSS Type 50): To retard sway, shock, vibration, or thermal expansion in piping systems.
5. Variable-Spring Hangers (MSS Type 51): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from hanger.
6. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.
7. Variable-Spring Trapeze Hangers (MSS Type 53): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from trapeze support.
8. Constant Supports: For critical piping stress and if necessary to avoid transfer of stress from one support to another support, critical terminal, or connected equipment. Include auxiliary stops

for erection, hydrostatic test, and load-adjustment capability. These supports include the following types:

a. Horizontal (MSS Type 54): Mounted horizontally.
b. Vertical (MSS Type 55): Mounted vertically.
c. Trapeze (MSS Type 56): Two vertical-type supports and one trapeze member.

P. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

Q. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

R. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

******END OF SECTION******

SECTION 230548
VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply **to this Section.**

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Elastomeric isolation pads.
2. Restrained-spring isolators.
3. Spring hangers.
4. Seismic-restraint accessories.
5. Mechanical anchor bolts.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For each vibration isolation and seismic-restraint device.

1. Include design calculations and details for selecting vibration isolators and seismic restraints complying with performance requirements, design criteria, and analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Welding certificates.

B. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Comply with seismic-restraint requirements in the IBC unless requirements in this Section are more stringent.

B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

C. Seismic-restraint devices shall have horizontal and vertical load testing and analysis and shall bear anchorage preapproval OPA number from OSHPD, preapproval by ICC-ES, or preapproval by another agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, showing maximum seismic-restraint ratings. Ratings based on independent testing are preferred to ratings based on calculations. If preapproved ratings are unavailable, submittals based on independent testing are preferred. Calculations (including combining shear and tensile loads) to support seismic-restraint designs must be signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Wind-Restraint Loading:

1. Basic Wind Speed: 140 mph.
2. Building Classification Category: III.
3. Minimum 10 lb/sq. ft. multiplied by maximum area of HVAC component projected on vertical plane normal to wind direction, and 45 degrees either side of normal.

B. Seismic-Restraint Loading:

1. Site Class as Defined in the IBC: D.
2. Assigned Seismic Use Group or Building Category as Defined in the IBC: III.
   a. Component Importance Factor: 1.25.
   b. Component Response Modification Factor: 2.5.
   c. Component Amplification Factor: 2.5.
3. Design Spectral Response Acceleration at Short Periods (0.2 Second): SDS - 0.209.
4. Design Spectral Response Acceleration at 1.0-Second Period: SD1 - 0.106.

2.2 ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION PADS

A. Elastomeric Isolation Pads:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Mason Industries, Inc.
   b. Novia; A Division of C&P.

c. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.

2. Fabrication: Single or multiple layers of sufficient durometer stiffness for uniform loading over pad area.
3. Size: Factory or field cut to match requirements of supported equipment.
4. Pad Material: Oil and water resistant with elastomeric properties.
5. Surface Pattern: Waffle pattern.
6. Infused nonwoven cotton or synthetic fibers.
7. Load-bearing metal plates adhered to pads.

2.3 RESTRAINED-SPRING ISOLATORS

A. Freestanding, Laterally Stable, Open-Spring Isolators with Vertical-Limit Stop Restraint:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Mason Industries, Inc.
   b. Novia; A Division of C&P.
   c. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
2. Housing: Steel housing with vertical-limit stops to prevent spring extension due to weight being removed.
   a. Base with holes for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Bases shall limit floor load to 500 psig.
   b. Top plate with threaded mounting holes.
   c. Internal leveling bolt that acts as blocking during installation.
3. Restraint: Limit stop as required for equipment and authorities having jurisdiction.
4. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
5. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
6. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
7. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.

2.4 SPRING HANGERS

A. Combination Coil-Spring and Elastomeric-Insert Hanger with Spring and Insert in Compression:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Mason Industries, Inc.
   b. Novia; A Division of C&P.

c. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.

2. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded hanger rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
3. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
4. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
5. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
6. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
7. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene. Steel-washer-reinforced cup to support spring and bushing projecting through bottom of frame.
8. Adjustable Vertical Stop: Steel washer with neoprene washer "up-stop" on lower threaded rod.
9. Self-centering hanger-rod cap to ensure concentricity between hanger rod and support spring coil.

2.5 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT ACCESSORIES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Mason Industries, Inc.
2. Novia; A Division of C&P.
3. Vibration & Seismic Technologies, LLC.

B. Hanger-Rod Stiffener: Steel tube or steel slotted-support-system sleeve with internally bolted connections to hanger rod.

C. Bushings for Floor-Mounted Equipment Anchor Bolts: Neoprene bushings designed for rigid equipment mountings and matched to type and size of anchor bolts and studs.

D. Bushing Assemblies for Wall-Mounted Equipment Anchorage: Assemblies of neoprene elements and steel sleeves designed for rigid equipment mountings and matched to type and size of attachment devices used.

E. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: One-piece, molded, oil- and water-resistant neoprene, with a flat washer face.

F. Mechanical Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and stud-wedge or female-wedge type in zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for

exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATIONS

A. Multiple Pipe Supports: Secure pipes to trapeze member with clamps approved for application by an evaluation service member of ICC-ES.

B. Hanger-Rod Stiffeners: Install hanger-rod stiffeners where indicated or scheduled on Drawings to receive them and where required to prevent buckling of hanger rods due to seismic forces.

C. Strength of Support and Seismic-Restraint Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength is adequate to carry present and future static and seismic loads within specified loading limits.

3.2 VIBRATION CONTROL AND SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICE INSTALLATION

A. Coordinate the location of embedded connection hardware with supported equipment attachment and mounting points and with requirements for concrete reinforcement and formwork specified in Section 03 30 00 – CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE.

B. Installation of vibration isolators must not cause any change of position of equipment, piping, or ductwork resulting in stresses or misalignment.

C. Comply with requirements in Section 07 72 00 – ROOF ACCESSORIES for installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations.

D. Equipment Restraints:

1. Install seismic snubbers on HVAC equipment mounted on vibration isolators. Locate snubbers as close as possible to vibration isolators and bolt to equipment base and supporting structure.
2. Install resilient bolt isolation washers on equipment anchor bolts where clearance between anchor and adjacent surface exceeds 0.125-inch.
3. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by an evaluation service member of ICC-ES that provides required submittals for component.

E. Piping Restraints:

1. Comply with requirements in MSS SP-127.
2. Space lateral supports a maximum of 40 feet o.c., and longitudinal supports a maximum of 80 feet o.c.
3. Brace a change of direction longer than 12 feet.

F. Install cables so they do not bend across edges of adjacent equipment or building structure.

G. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by an evaluation service member of ICC-ES that provides required submittals for component.

H. Install bushing assemblies for anchor bolts for floor-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media between anchor bolt and mounting hole in concrete base.

I. Install bushing assemblies for mounting bolts for wall-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media where equipment or equipment-mounting channels are attached to wall.

J. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing to structure at flanges of beams, at upper truss chords of bar joists, or at concrete members.

K. Drilled-in Anchors:

1. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcing or embedded items during coring or drilling. Notify the structural engineer if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid prestressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.
2. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
3. Wedge Anchors: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors shall be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
4. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque, using a torque wrench.
5. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior and stainless-steel anchors for exterior applications.

3.3 ACCOMMODATION OF DIFFERENTIAL SEISMIC MOTION

A. Install flexible connections in piping where they cross seismic joints, where adjacent sections or branches are supported by different structural elements, and where the connections terminate with connection to equipment that is anchored to a different structural element from the one supporting the connections as they approach equipment. Comply with requirements in Section 23 21 13 – HYDRONIC PIPING for piping flexible connections.

3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust isolators after piping system is at operating weight.
B. Adjust limit stops on restrained-spring isolators to mount equipment at normal operating height. After equipment installation is complete, adjust limit stops so they are out of contact during normal operation.

******END OF SECTION******

SECTION 230553
IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Equipment labels.
2. Warning signs and labels.
3. Pipe labels.
4. Duct labels.
5. Stencils.
6. Valve tags.
7. Warning tags.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.

C. Equipment Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed content for each label.

D. Valve numbering scheme.

E. Valve Schedules: For each piping system to include in maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

A. Plastic Labels for Equipment:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Brady Corporation.
b. Brimar Industries, Inc.
c. Carlton Industries, LP.
d. Champion America.
e. Craftmark Pipe Markers.
f. emedco.
g. Kolbi Pipe Marker Co.
h. LEM Products Inc.
i. Marking Services, Inc.
j. Seton Identification Products.

2. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
3. Letter Color: White.
4. Background Color: Black.
5. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
6. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
7. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
8. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
9. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

B. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.

C. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number, and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules) and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Brady Corporation.
2. Brimar Industries, Inc.

3. Carlton Industries, LP.
4. Champion America.
5. Craftmark Pipe Markers.
6. emedco.
7. LEM Products Inc.
8. Marking Sevices Inc.
9. National Marker Company.
10. Seton Identification Products.
11. Stranco, Inc.

B. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.

C. Letter Color: Black.

D. Background Color: Yellow.

E. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.

F. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.

G. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.

H. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.

I. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

J. Label Content: Include caution and warning information plus emergency notification instructions.

2.3 PIPE LABELS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Actioncraft Products, Inc.; a division of Industrial Test Equipment Co., Inc.
2. Brady Corporation.
3. Brimar Industries, Inc.

4. Carlton Industries, LP.
5. Champion America.
6. Craftmark Pipe Markers.
7. emedco.
8. Kolbi Pipe Marker Co.
9. LEM Products Inc.
10. Marking Sevices Inc.
11. Seton Identification Products.

B. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction according to ASME A13.1.

C. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.

D. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings; also include pipe size and an arrow indicating flow direction.

1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.

2. Lettering Size: Size letters according to ASME A13.1 for piping.

2.4 DUCT LABELS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Brady Corporation.
2. Brimar Industries, Inc.
3. Carlton Industries, LP.
4. Champion America.
5. Craftmark Pipe Markers.
6. emedco.
7. Kolbi Pipe Marker Co.
8. LEM Products Inc.
9. Marking Sevices Inc.
10. Seton Identification Products.

B. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.

C. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.

D. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.

E. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.

F. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.

G. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

H. Duct Label Contents: Include identification of duct service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings; also include duct size and an arrow indicating flow direction.

1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with duct system service lettering to accommodate both directions or as separate unit on each duct label to indicate flow direction.

2.5 VALVE TAGS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Actioncraft Products, Inc.; a division of Industrial Test Equipment Co., Inc.
2. Brady Corporation.
3. Brimar Industries, Inc.
4. Carlton Industries, LP.
5. Champion America.
6. Craftmark Pipe Markers.
7. emedco.
8. Kolbi Pipe Marker Co.
9. LEM Products Inc.
10. Marking Sevices Inc.
11. Seton Identification Products.

B. Description: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch numbers.

1. Tag Material: Brass, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
2. Background Color: Natural brass.
3. Letter Color: Black.
4. Tag Size: 1-1/2 inches, round.
5. Fasteners: Brass beaded chain.

C. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.

1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.6 WARNING TAGS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Brady Corporation.
2. Brimar Industries, Inc.
3. Carlton Industries, LP.
4. Champion America.
5. Craftmark Pipe Markers.
6. emedco.
7. Kolbi Pipe Marker Co.
8. LEM Products Inc.
9. Marking Sevices Inc.
10. Seton Identification Products.

B. Description: Preprinted or partially preprinted accident-prevention tags of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.

1. Size: 3 by 5-1/4 inches minimum.
2. Fasteners: Brass grommet and wire.
3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as "DANGER," "CAUTION," or "DO NOT OPERATE."
4. Color: Safety-yellow background with black lettering.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.

B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.

C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

3.3 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.

B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

3.4 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

A. Pipe Label Locations: Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:

1. Near each valve and control device.
2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
3. Near penetrations and on both sides of through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.

B. Directional Flow Arrows: Arrows shall be used to indicate direction of flow in pipes, including pipes where flow is allowed in both directions.

C. Pipe Label Color Schedule:

1. Heating Water Piping: White letters on a safety-green background.
2. Condensate Drain Water Piping: White letters on a safety-green background.
3. Refrigerant Piping: Black letters on a safety-orange background.

3.5 DUCT LABEL INSTALLATION

A. Install self-adhesive duct labels with permanent adhesive on air ducts in the following color codes:

1. Blue: For cold-air supply ducts.
2. Yellow: For hot-air supply ducts.
3. Green: For exhaust-, outside-, relief-, return-, and mixed-air ducts.

B. Stenciled Duct Label Option: Stenciled labels showing service and flow direction may be provided instead of plastic-laminated duct labels, at Installer's option.

C. Locate labels near points where ducts enter into and exit from concealed spaces and at maximum intervals of 50 feet in each space where ducts are exposed or concealed by removable ceiling system.

3.6 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves, valves within factory-fabricated equipment units, shutoff valves, faucets, convenience and lawn-watering hose connections, and HVAC terminal devices and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in a valve schedule.

3.7 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION

A. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

******END OF SECTION******

SECTION 230593
TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Balancing Air Systems:
   a. Constant-volume air systems.
   b. Variable-air-volume systems.
2. Balancing Hydronic Piping Systems:
   a. Variable-flow hydronic systems.
3. Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Equipment:
   a. Motors.
   b. Condensing units.
   c. Heat-transfer coils.
4. Duct leakage tests.
5. Control system verification.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. AABC: Associated Air Balance Council.

B. BAS: Building automation systems.

C. NEBB: National Environmental Balancing Bureau.

D. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.

E. TABB: Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Bureau.

F. TAB Specialist: An independent entity meeting qualification to perform TAB work.

G. TDH: Total dynamic head.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit documentation that the TAB specialist and this Project's TAB team members meet the qualifications specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.

B. Contract Documents Examination Report: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit the Contract Documents review report as specified in Part 3.

C. Strategies and Procedures Plan: Within 60 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit TAB strategies and step-by-step procedures as specified in "Preparation" Article.

D. System Readiness Checklists: Within 90 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit system readiness checklists as specified in "Preparation" Article.

E. Examination Report: Submit a summary report of the examination review required in "Examination" Article.

F. Certified TAB reports.

G. Sample report forms.

H. Instrument calibration reports, to include the following:

1. Instrument type and make.
2. Serial number.
3. Application.
4. Dates of use.
5. Dates of calibration.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. TAB Specialists Qualifications: Certified by AABC or NEBB.

1. TAB Field Supervisor: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by AABC or NEBB.
2. TAB Technician: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by AABC or NEBB as a TAB technician.

B. Instrumentation Type, Quantity, Accuracy, and Calibration: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 111, Section 4 – INSTRUMENTATION.

C. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 7.2.2 – AIR BALANCING.

D. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6.7.2.3 – SYSTEM BALANCING.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Full Owner Occupancy: Owner will occupy the site and existing building during entire TAB period. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.

B. Partial Owner Occupancy: Owner may occupy completed areas of building before Substantial Completion. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover conditions in systems designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.

B. Examine installed systems for balancing devices, such as test ports, gage cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers. Verify that locations of these balancing devices are applicable for intended purpose and are accessible.

C. Examine the approved submittals for HVAC systems and equipment.

D. Examine design data including HVAC system descriptions, statements of design assumptions for environmental conditions and systems output, and statements of philosophies and assumptions about HVAC system and equipment controls.

E. Examine ceiling plenums and underfloor air plenums used for supply, return, or relief air to verify that they are properly separated from adjacent areas. Verify that penetrations in plenum walls are sealed and fire-stopped if required.

F. Examine equipment performance data including fan and pump curves.

1. Relate performance data to Project conditions and requirements, including system effects that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system.

2. Calculate system-effect factors to reduce performance ratings of HVAC equipment when installed under conditions different from the conditions used to rate equipment performance. To calculate system effects for air systems, use tables and charts found in AMCA 201, "Fans and Systems," or in SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Duct Design." Compare results with the design data and installed conditions.

G. Examine system and equipment installations and verify that field quality-control testing, cleaning, and adjusting specified in individual Sections have been performed.

H. Examine test reports specified in individual system and equipment Sections.

I. Examine HVAC equipment and verify that bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight, filters are clean, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.

J. Examine terminal units, such as variable-air-volume boxes, and verify that they are accessible and their controls are connected and functioning.

K. Examine strainers. Verify that startup screens have been replaced by permanent screens with indicated perforations.

L. Examine control valves for proper installation for their intended function of throttling, diverting, or mixing fluid flows.

M. Examine heat-transfer coils for correct piping connections and for clean and straight fins.

N. Examine system pumps to ensure absence of entrained air in the suction piping.

O. Examine operating safety interlocks and controls on HVAC equipment.

P. Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of TAB procedures. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from indicated values.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Prepare a TAB plan that includes the following:

1. Equipment and systems to be tested.
2. Strategies and step-by-step procedures for balancing the systems.

3. Instrumentation to be used.
4. Sample forms with specific identification for all equipment.

B. Perform system-readiness checks of HVAC systems and equipment to verify system readiness for TAB work. Include, at a minimum, the following:
   1. Airside:
      a. Verify that leakage and pressure tests on air distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed.
      b. Duct systems are complete with terminals installed.
      c. Volume, smoke, and fire dampers are open and functional.
      d. Clean filters are installed.
      e. Fans are operating, free of vibration, and rotating in correct direction.
      f. Variable-frequency controllers' startup is complete, and safeties are verified.
      g. Automatic temperature-control systems are operational.
      h. Ceilings are installed.
      i. Windows and doors are installed.
      j. Suitable access to balancing devices and equipment is provided.
   2. Hydronics:
      a. Verify leakage and pressure tests on water distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed.
      b. Piping is complete with terminals installed.
      c. Water treatment is complete.
      d. Systems are flushed, filled, and air purged.
      e. Strainers are pulled and cleaned.
      f. Control valves are functioning per the sequence of operation.
      g. Shutoff and balance valves have been verified to be 100 percent open.
      h. Pumps are started, and proper rotation is verified.
      i. Pump gage connections are installed directly at pump inlet and outlet flanges or in discharge and suction pipe prior to valves or strainers.
      j. Variable-frequency controllers' startup is complete, and safeties are verified.
      k. Suitable access to balancing devices and equipment is provided.

3.3 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR TESTING AND BALANCING

A. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system according to the procedures contained in AABC's "National Standards for Total System Balance" NEBB's "Procedural Standards for Testing, Adjusting, and

Balancing of Environmental Systems" SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing" and in this Section.

B. Cut insulation, ducts, pipes, and equipment cabinets for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary for TAB procedures.

1. After testing and balancing, patch probe holes in ducts with same material and thickness as used to construct ducts.
2. After testing and balancing, install test ports and duct access doors that comply with requirements in Section 233110 – DUCTWORK AND ACCESSORIES
3. Install and join new insulation that matches removed materials. Restore insulation, coverings, vapor barrier, and finish according to Section 230713 – DUCT INSULATION and Section 230719 – HVAC PIPING INSULATION.

C. Mark equipment and balancing devices, including damper-control positions, valve position indicators, fan-speed-control levers, and similar controls and devices, with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material to show final settings.

D. Take and report testing and balancing measurements in inch-pound (IP) units.

3.4 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR BALANCING AIR SYSTEMS

A. Prepare test reports for both fans and outlets. Obtain manufacturer's outlet factors and recommended testing procedures. Cross-check the summation of required outlet volumes with required fan volumes.

B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" duct layouts.

C. For variable-air-volume systems, develop a plan to simulate diversity.

D. Determine the best locations in main and branch ducts for accurate duct-airflow measurements.

E. Check airflow patterns from the outdoor-air louvers and dampers and the return- and exhaust-air dampers through the supply-fan discharge and mixing dampers.

F. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.

G. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.

H. Check dampers for proper position to achieve desired airflow path.

I. Check for airflow blockages.

J. Check condensate drains for proper connections and functioning.

K. Check for proper sealing of air-handling-unit components.

L. Verify that air duct system is sealed as specified in Section 23 31 10 – DUCTWORK AND ACCESSORIES.

3.5 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-VOLUME AIR SYSTEMS

A. Adjust fans to deliver total indicated airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.

1. Measure total airflow.
   a. Set outside-air, return-air, and relief-air dampers for proper position that simulates minimum outdoor-air conditions.
   b. Where duct conditions allow, measure airflow by Pitot-tube traverse. If necessary, perform multiple Pitot-tube traverses to obtain total airflow.
   c. Where duct conditions are not suitable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, a coil traverse may be acceptable.
   d. If a reliable Pitot-tube traverse or coil traverse is not possible, measure airflow at terminals and calculate the total airflow.
2. Measure fan static pressures as follows:
   a. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
   b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan inlet or through the flexible connection.
   c. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up the air-handling system.
   d. Report artificial loading of filters at the time static pressures are measured.
3. Review Record Documents to determine variations in design static pressures versus actual static pressures. Calculate actual system-effect factors. Recommend adjustments to accommodate actual conditions.
4. Do not make fan-speed adjustments that result in motor overload. Consult equipment manufacturers about fan-speed safety factors. Modulate dampers and measure fan-motor amperage to ensure that no overload occurs. Measure amperage in full-cooling, full-

heating, economizer, and any other operating mode to determine the maximum required brake horsepower.

B. Adjust volume dampers for main duct, submain ducts, and major branch ducts to indicated airflows.
   1. Measure airflow of submain and branch ducts.
   2. Adjust submain and branch duct volume dampers for specified airflow.
   3. Re-measure each submain and branch duct after all have been adjusted.

C. Adjust air inlets and outlets for each space to indicated airflows.

   1. Set airflow patterns of adjustable outlets for proper distribution without drafts.
   2. Measure inlets and outlets airflow.
   3. Adjust each inlet and outlet for specified airflow.
   4. Re-measure each inlet and outlet after they have been adjusted.

D. Verify final system conditions.

   1. Re-measure and confirm that minimum outdoor, return, and relief airflows are within design. Readjust to design if necessary.
   2. Re-measure and confirm that total airflow is within design.
   3. Re-measure all final fan operating data, rpms, volts, amps, and static profile.
   4. Mark all final settings.
   5. Test system in economizer mode. Verify proper operation and adjust if necessary.
   6. Measure and record all operating data.
   7. Record final fan-performance data.

3.6 PROCEDURES FOR VARIABLE-AIR-VOLUME SYSTEMS

A. Adjust the variable-air-volume systems as follows:

   1. Verify that the system static pressure sensor is located two-thirds of the distance down the duct from the fan discharge.
   2. Verify that the system is under static pressure control.
   3. Select the terminal unit that is most critical to the supply-fan airflow. Measure inlet static pressure and adjust system static pressure control set point so the entering static pressure for the critical terminal unit is not less than the sum of the terminal-unit manufacturer's recommended minimum inlet static pressure plus the static pressure needed to overcome terminal-unit discharge system losses.

4. Calibrate and balance each terminal unit for maximum and minimum design airflow as follows:
    a. Adjust controls so that terminal is calling for maximum airflow. Some controllers require starting with minimum airflow. Verify calibration procedure for specific project.
    b. Measure airflow and adjust calibration factor as required for design maximum airflow. Record calibration factor.
    c. When maximum airflow is correct, balance the air outlets downstream from terminal units.
    d. Adjust controls so that terminal is calling for minimum airflow.
    e. Measure airflow and adjust calibration factor as required for design minimum airflow. Record calibration factor. If no minimum calibration is available, note any deviation from design airflow.
    f. When in full cooling or full heating, ensure that there is no mixing of hot-deck and cold-deck airstreams unless so designed.
    g. On constant volume terminals, in critical areas where room pressure is to be maintained, verify that the airflow remains constant over the full range of full cooling to full heating. Note any deviation from design airflow or room pressure.
5. After terminals have been calibrated and balanced, test and adjust system for total airflow. Adjust fans to deliver total design airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.
    a. Set outside-air, return-air, and relief-air dampers for proper position that simulates minimum outdoor-air conditions.
    b. Set terminals for maximum airflow. If system design includes diversity, adjust terminals for maximum and minimum airflow so that connected total matches fan selection and simulates actual load in the building.
    c. Where duct conditions allow, measure airflow by Pitot-tube traverse. If necessary, perform multiple Pitot-tube traverses to obtain total airflow.
    d. Where duct conditions are not suitable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, a coil traverse may be acceptable.
    e. If a reliable Pitot-tube traverse or coil traverse is not possible, measure airflow at terminals and calculate the total airflow.
6. Measure fan static pressures as follows:
    a. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
    b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan inlet or through the flexible connection.

c. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up the air-handling system.
d. Report any artificial loading of filters at the time static pressures are measured.

7. Set final return and outside airflow to the fan while operating at maximum return airflow and minimum outdoor airflow.
   a. Balance the return-air ducts and inlets the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
   b. Verify that terminal units are meeting design airflow under system maximum flow.
8. Re-measure the inlet static pressure at the most critical terminal unit and adjust the system static pressure set point to the most energy-efficient set point to maintain the optimum system static pressure. Record set point and give to controls contractor.
9. Verify final system conditions as follows:
   a. Re-measure and confirm that minimum outdoor, return, and relief airflows are within design. Readjust to match design if necessary.
   b. Re-measure and confirm that total airflow is within design.
   c. Re-measure final fan operating data, rpms, volts, amps, and static profile.
   d. Mark final settings.
   e. Test system in economizer mode. Verify proper operation and adjust if necessary. Measure and record all operating data.
   f. Verify tracking between supply and return fans.

3.7 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

A. Prepare test reports for pumps, coils, and heat exchangers. Obtain approved submittals and manufacturer-recommended testing procedures. Crosscheck the summation of required coil and heat exchanger flow rates with pump design flow rate.

B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" piping layouts.

C. In addition to requirements in "Preparation" Article, prepare hydronic systems for testing and balancing as follows:

1. Check liquid level in expansion tank.
2. Check highest vent for adequate pressure.
3. Check flow-control valves for proper position.
4. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.
5. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.

6. Check that air has been purged from the system.

3.8 PROCEDURES FOR VARIABLE-FLOW HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

A. Balance systems with automatic two- and three-way control valves by setting systems at maximum flow through heat-exchange terminals, and proceed as specified above for hydronic systems.

B. Adjust the variable-flow hydronic system as follows:

1. Verify that the differential-pressure sensor is located as indicated.
2. Determine whether there is diversity in the system.

C. For systems with no diversity:

1. Adjust pumps to deliver total design gpm.
    a. Measure total water flow.
        1) Position valves for full flow through coils.
        2) Measure flow by main flow meter, if installed.
        3) If main flow meter is not installed, determine flow by pump TDH or exchanger pressure drop.
    b. Measure pump TDH as follows:
        1) Measure discharge pressure directly at the pump outlet flange or in discharge pipe prior to any valves.
        2) Measure inlet pressure directly at the pump inlet flange or in suction pipe prior to any valves or strainers.
        3) Convert pressure to head and correct for differences in gage heights.
        4) Verify pump impeller size by measuring the TDH with the discharge valve closed. Note the point on manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow and verify that the pump has the intended impeller size.
        5) With valves open, read pump TDH. Adjust pump discharge valve until design water flow is achieved.
    c. Monitor motor performance during procedures and do not operate motor in an overloaded condition.
2. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed in mains and branches to design water flows.
    a. Measure flow in main and branch pipes.
    b. Adjust main and branch balance valves for design flow.
    c. Re-measure each main and branch after all have been adjusted.
3. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed at terminals for each space to design water flows.

a. Measure flow at terminals.
b. Adjust each terminal to design flow.
c. Re-measure each terminal after it is adjusted.
d. Position control valves to bypass the coil and adjust the bypass valve to maintain design flow.
e. Perform temperature tests after flows have been balanced.

4. For systems with pressure-independent valves at terminals:
   a. Measure differential pressure and verify that it is within manufacturer's specified range.
   b. Perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
5. For systems without pressure-independent valves or flow-measuring devices at terminals:
   a. Measure and balance coils by either coil pressure drop or temperature method.
   b. If balanced by coil pressure drop, perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
6. Prior to verifying final system conditions, determine the system differential-pressure set point.
7. If the pump discharge valve was used to set total system flow with variable-frequency controller at 60 Hz, at completion open discharge valve 100 percent and allow variable-frequency controller to control system differential-pressure set point. Record pump data under both conditions.
8. Mark final settings and verify that all memory stops have been set.
9. Verify final system conditions as follows:
   a. Re-measure and confirm that total water flow is within design.
   b. Re-measure final pumps' operating data, TDH, volts, amps, and static profile.
   c. Mark final settings.
10. Verify that memory stops have been set.

D. For systems with diversity:

1. Determine diversity factor.
2. Simulate system diversity by closing required number of control valves, as approved by the design engineer.
3. Adjust pumps to deliver total design gpm.
   a. Measure total water flow.
      1) Position valves for full flow through coils.
      2) Measure flow by main flow meter, if installed.
      3) If main flow meter is not installed, determine flow by pump TDH or exchanger pressure drop.
   b. Measure pump TDH as follows:

1) Measure discharge pressure directly at the pump outlet flange or in discharge pipe prior to any valves.
2) Measure inlet pressure directly at the pump inlet flange or in suction pipe prior to any valves or strainers.
3) Convert pressure to head and correct for differences
I n gage heights.
4) Verify pump impeller size by measuring the TDH with the discharge valve closed. Note the point on manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow and verify that the pump has the intended impeller size.
5) With valves open, read pump TDH. Adjust pump discharge valve until design water flow is achieved.

c. Monitor motor performance during procedures and do not operate motor in an overloaded condition.

4. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed in mains and branches to design water flows.
   a. Measure flow in main and branch pipes.
   b. Adjust main and branch balance valves for design flow.
   c. Re-measure each main and branch after all have been adjusted.
5. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed at terminals for each space to design water flows.
   a. Measure flow at terminals.
   b. Adjust each terminal to design flow.
   c. Re-measure each terminal after it is adjusted.
   d. Position control valves to bypass the coil, and adjust the bypass valve to maintain design flow.
   e. Perform temperature tests after flows have been balanced.
6. For systems with pressure-independent valves at terminals:
   a. Measure differential pressure, and verify that it is within manufacturer's specified range.
   b. Perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
7. For systems without pressure-independent valves or flow-measuring devices at terminals:
   a. Measure and balance coils by either coil pressure drop or temperature method.
   b. If balanced by coil pressure drop, perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
8. Open control valves that were shut. Close a sufficient number of control valves that were previously open to maintain diversity, and balance terminals that were just opened.
9. Prior to verifying final system conditions, determine system differential-pressure set point.

10. If the pump discharge valve was used to set total system flow with variable-frequency controller at 60 Hz, at completion open discharge valve 100 percent and allow variable-frequency controller to control system differential-pressure set point. Record pump data under both conditions.
11. Mark final settings and verify that memory stops have been set.
12. Verify final system conditions as follows:
    a. Re-measure and confirm that total water flow is within design.
    b. Re-measure final pumps' operating data, TDH, volts, amps, and static profile.
    c. Mark final settings.
13. Verify that memory stops have been set.

3.9 PROCEDURES FOR MOTORS

A. Motors 1/2 HP and Larger: Test at final balanced conditions and record the following data:

1. Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.
2. Motor horsepower rating.
3. Motor rpm.
4. Phase and hertz.
5. Nameplate and measured voltage, each phase.
6. Nameplate and measured amperage, each phase.
7. Starter size and thermal-protection-element rating.
8. Service factor and frame size.

B. Motors Driven by Variable-Frequency Controllers: Test manual bypass of controller to prove proper operation.

3.10 PROCEDURES FOR CONDENSING UNITS

A. Verify proper rotation of fans.

B. Measure entering- and leaving-air temperatures.

C. Record fan and motor operating data.

3.11 PROCEDURES FOR HEAT-TRANSFER COILS

A. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each water coil:

1. Entering- and leaving-water temperature.
2. Water flow rate.

3. Water pressure drop for major (more than 20 gpm) equipment coils, excluding unitary equipment such as reheat coils, unit heaters, and fan-coil units.
4. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
5. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air for cooling coils.
6. Airflow.

B. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each electric heating coil:
1. Nameplate data.
2. Airflow.
3. Entering- and leaving-air temperature at full load.
4. Voltage and amperage input of each phase at full load.
5. Calculated kilowatt at full load.
6. Fuse or circuit-breaker rating for overload protection.

C. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each steam coil:

1. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
2. Airflow.
3. Inlet steam pressure.

D. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each refrigerant coil:

1. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
2. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
3. Airflow.

3.12 DUCT LEAKAGE TESTS

A. Witness the duct pressure testing performed by Installer.

B. Verify that proper test methods are used and that leakage rates are within specified tolerances.

C. Report deficiencies observed.

3.13 CONTROLS VERIFICATION

A. In conjunction with system balancing, perform the following:

1. Verify temperature control system is operating within the design limitations.
2. Confirm that the sequences of operation are in compliance with Contract Documents.
3. Verify that controllers are calibrated and function as intended.

4. Verify that controller set points are as indicated.
5. Verify the operation of lockout or interlock systems.
6. Verify the operation of valve and damper actuators.
7. Verify that controlled devices are properly installed and connected to correct controller.
8. Verify that controlled devices travel freely and are in position indicated by controller: open, closed, or modulating.
9. Verify location and installation of sensors to ensure that they sense only intended temperature, humidity, or pressure.

B. Reporting: Include a summary of verifications performed, remaining deficiencies, and variations from indicated conditions.

3.14 TOLERANCES

A. Set HVAC system's airflow rates and water flow rates within the following tolerances:

1. Supply, Return, and Exhaust Fans and Equipment with Fans: Plus or minus 10 percent.
2. Air Outlets and Inlets: Plus or minus 10 percent.
3. Heating-Water Flow Rate: Plus or minus 10 percent.

B. Maintaining pressure relationships as designed shall have priority over the tolerances specified above.

3.15 PROGRESS REPORTING

A. Initial Construction-Phase Report: Based on examination of the Contract Documents as specified in "Examination" Article, prepare a report on the adequacy of design for systems balancing devices. Recommend changes and additions to systems balancing devices to facilitate proper performance measuring and balancing. Recommend changes and additions to HVAC systems and general construction to allow access for performance measuring and balancing devices.

B. Status Reports: Prepare monthly progress reports to describe completed procedures, procedures in progress, and scheduled procedures. Include a list of deficiencies and problems found in systems being tested and balanced. Prepare a separate report for each system and each building floor for systems serving multiple floors.

3.16 FINAL REPORT

A. General: Prepare a certified written report; tabulate and divide the report into separate sections for tested systems and balanced systems.

1. Include a certification sheet at the front of the report's binder, signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.
2. Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.
3. Certify validity and accuracy of field data.

B. Final Report Contents: In addition to certified field-report data, include the following:

1. Pump curves.
2. Fan curves.
3. Manufacturers' test data.
4. Field test reports prepared by system and equipment installers.
5. Other information relative to equipment performance; do not include Shop Drawings and Product Data.

C. General Report Data: In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data:

1. Title page.
2. Name and address of the TAB specialist.
3. Project name.
4. Project location.
5. Architect's name and address.
6. Engineer's name and address.
7. Contractor's name and address.
8. Report date.
9. Signature of TAB supervisor who certifies the report.
10. Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report. Number each page in the report.
11. Summary of contents including the following:
    a. Indicated versus final performance.
    b. Notable characteristics of systems.
    c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.
12. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.
13. Data for terminal units, including manufacturer's name, type, size, and fittings.
14. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports vary from indicated values.
15. Test conditions for fans and pump performance forms including the following:
    a. Settings for outdoor-, return-, and exhaust-air dampers.
    b. Conditions of filters.
    c. Cooling coil, wet- and dry-bulb conditions.
    d. Face and bypass damper settings at coils.

e. Fan drive settings including settings and percentage of maximum pitch diameter.
f. Inlet vane settings for variable-air-volume systems.
g. Settings for supply-air, static-pressure controller.
h. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.

D. System Diagrams: Include schematic layouts of air and hydronic distribution systems. Present each system with single-line diagram and include the following:
1. Quantities of outdoor, supply, return, and exhaust airflows.
2. Water and steam flow rates.
3. Duct, outlet, and inlet sizes.
4. Pipe and valve sizes and locations.
5. Terminal units.
6. Balancing stations.
7. Position of balancing devices.

E. Air-Handling-Unit Test Reports: For air-handling units with coils, include the following:

1. Unit Data:
   a. Unit identification.
   b. Location.
   c. Make and type.
   d. Model number and unit size.
   e. Manufacturer's serial number.
   f. Unit arrangement and class.
   g. Discharge arrangement.
   h. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
   i. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.
   j. Number, make, and size of belts.
   k. Number, type, and size of filters.
2. Motor Data:
   a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
   b. Horsepower and rpm.
   c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
   d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
   e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
   f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.
3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
   a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
   b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
   c. Fan rpm.
   d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.

e. Filter static-pressure differential in inches wg.
f. Preheat-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
g. Cooling-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
h. Heating-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
i. Outdoor airflow in cfm.
j. Return airflow in cfm.
k. Outdoor-air damper position.
l. Return-air damper position.
m. Vortex damper position.

F. Apparatus-Coil Test Reports:

1. Coil Data:
   a. System identification.
   b. Location.
   c. Coil type.
   d. Number of rows.
   e. Fin spacing in fins per inch o.c.
   f. Make and model number.
   g. Face area in sq. ft.
   h. Tube size in NPS.
   i. Tube and fin materials.
   j. Circuiting arrangement.
2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
   a. Airflow rate in cfm.
   b. Average face velocity in fpm.
   c. Air pressure drop in inches wg.
   d. Outdoor-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg. F.
   e. Return-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg. F.
   f. Entering-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg. F.
   g. Leaving-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg. F.
   h. Water flow rate in gpm.
   i. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig.
   j. Entering-water temperature in deg. F.
   k. Leaving-water temperature in deg. F.
   l. Refrigerant expansion valve and refrigerant types.
   m. Refrigerant suction pressure in psig.
   n. Refrigerant suction temperature in deg. F.
   o. Inlet steam pressure in psig.

G. Electric-Coil Test Reports: For electric furnaces, duct coils, and electric coils installed in central-station air-handling units, include the following:

1. Unit Data:
   a. System identification.
   b. Location.

c. Coil identification.
d. Capacity in Btu/h.
e. Number of stages.
f. Connected volts, phase, and hertz.
g. Rated amperage.
h. Airflow rate in cfm.
i. Face area in sq. ft.
j. Minimum face velocity in fpm.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
   a. Heat output in Btu/h.
   b. Airflow rate in cfm.
   c. Air velocity in fpm.
   d. Entering-air temperature in deg. F.
   e. Leaving-air temperature in deg. F.
   f. Voltage at each connection.
   g. Amperage for each phase.

H. Fan Test Reports: For supply, return, and exhaust fans, include the following:

1. Fan Data:
   a. System identification.
   b. Location.
   c. Make and type.
   d. Model number and size.
   e. Manufacturer's serial number.
   f. Arrangement and class.
   g. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
   h. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.
2. Motor Data:
   a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
   b. Horsepower and rpm.
   c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
   d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
   e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
   f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.
   g. Number, make, and size of belts.
3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
   a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
   b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
   c. Fan rpm.
   d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
   e. Suction static pressure in inches wg.

I. Round, Flat-Oval, and Rectangular Duct Traverse Reports: Include a diagram with a grid representing the duct cross-section and record the following:

1. Report Data:
    a. System and air-handling-unit number.
    b. Location and zone.
    c. Traverse air temperature in deg. F.
    d. Duct static pressure in inches wg.
    e. Duct size in inches.
    f. Duct area in sq. ft.
    g. Indicated airflow rate in cfm.
    h. Indicated velocity in fpm.
    i. Actual airflow rate in cfm.
    j. Actual average velocity in fpm.
    k. Barometric pressure in psig.

J. Air-Terminal-Device Reports:

1. Unit Data:
    a. System and air-handling unit identification.
    b. Location and zone.
    c. Apparatus used for test.
    d. Area served.
    e. Make.
    f. Number from system diagram.
    g. Type and model number.
    h. Size.
    i. Effective area in sq. ft.
2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
    a. Airflow rate in cfm.
    b. Air velocity in fpm.
    c. Preliminary airflow rate as needed in cfm.
    d. Preliminary velocity as needed in fpm.
    e. Final airflow rate in cfm.
    f. Final velocity in fpm.
    g. Space temperature in deg. F.

K. System-Coil Reports: For reheat coils and water coils of terminal units, include the following:

1. Unit Data:
    a. System and air-handling-unit identification.
    b. Location and zone.
    c. Room or riser served.
    d. Coil make and size.

e. Flowmeter type.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
   a. Airflow rate in cfm.
   b. Entering-water temperature in deg. F.
   c. Leaving-water temperature in deg. F.
   d. Water pressure drop in feet of head or psig.
   e. Entering-air temperature in deg. F.
   f. Leaving-air temperature in deg. F.

L. Pump Test Reports: Calculate impeller size by plotting the shutoff head on pump curves and include the following:

1. Unit Data:
   a. Unit identification.
   b. Location.
   c. Service.
   d. Make and size.
   e. Model number and serial number.
   f. Water flow rate in gpm.
   g. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig.
   h. Required net positive suction head in feet of head or psig.
   i. Pump rpm.
   j. Impeller diameter in inches.
   k. Motor make and frame size.
   l. Motor horsepower and rpm.
   m. Voltage at each connection.
   n. Amperage for each phase.
   o. Full-load amperage and service factor.
   p. Seal type.
2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
   a. Static head in feet of head or psig.
   b. Pump shutoff pressure in feet of head or psig.
   c. Actual impeller size in inches.
   d. Full-open flow rate in gpm.
   e. Full-open pressure in feet of head or psig.
   f. Final discharge pressure in feet of head or psig.
   g. Final suction pressure in feet of head or psig.
   h. Final total pressure in feet of head or psig.
   i. Final water flow rate in gpm.
   j. Voltage at each connection.
   k. Amperage for each phase.

M. Instrument Calibration Reports:

1. Report Data:
   a. Instrument type and make.

b. Serial number.
c. Application.
d. Dates of use.
e. Dates of calibration.

3.17 VERIFICATION OF TAB REPORT

A. The TAB specialist's test and balance engineer shall conduct the inspection in the presence of Architect and Commissioning Authority.

B. Architect shall randomly select measurements, documented in the final report, to be rechecked. Rechecking shall be limited to either 10 percent of the total measurements recorded or the extent of measurements that can be accomplished in a normal 8-hour business day.

C. If rechecks yield measurements that differ from the measurements documented in the final report by more than the tolerances allowed, the measurements shall be noted as "FAILED."

D. If the number of "FAILED" measurements is greater than 10 percent of the total measurements checked during the final inspection, the testing and balancing shall be considered incomplete and shall be rejected.

E. If TAB work fails, proceed as follows:

1. TAB specialists shall recheck all measurements and make adjustments. Revise the final report and balancing device settings to include all changes; resubmit the final report and request a second final inspection.
2. If the second final inspection also fails, Owner may contract the services of another TAB specialist to complete TAB work according to the Contract Documents and deduct the cost of the services from the original TAB specialist's final payment.
3. If the second verification also fails, Owner may contact AABC Headquarters regarding the AABC National Performance Guaranty.

F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.18 ADDITIONAL TESTS

A. Within 90 days of completing TAB, perform additional TAB to verify that balanced conditions are being maintained throughout and to correct unusual conditions.

B. Seasonal Periods: If initial TAB procedures were not performed during near-peak summer and winter conditions, perform additional TAB during near-peak summer and winter conditions.

******END OF SECTION******

SECTION 230713
DUCT INSULATION

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 23 07 19 "HVAC Piping Insulation."
2. Section 23 31 1 "Ductwork and Accessories" for duct liners.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes insulating the following duct services:

1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
2. Indoor, exposed supply and outdoor air.
3. Indoor, concealed return located in unconditioned space.
4. Indoor, exposed return located in unconditioned space.
5. Indoor, concealed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
6. Indoor, exposed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
7. Outdoor, concealed supply and return.
8. Outdoor, exposed supply and return.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied if any).

B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
2. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, dampers, specialties and flanges for each type of insulation.
3. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
4. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

C. Samples: For each type of insulation and jacket indicated. Identify each Sample, describing product and intended use. Sample sizes are as follows:

1. Sheet Form Insulation Materials: 12 inches' square.
2. Sheet Jacket Materials: 12 inches' square.
3. Manufacturer's Color Charts: For products where color is specified, show the full range of colors available for each type of finish material.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.

B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.

C. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.

B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

C. Mockups: Before installing insulation, build mockups for each type of insulation and finish listed below to demonstrate quality of insulation application and finishes. Build mockups in the location indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect. Use materials indicated for the completed Work.

1. Ductwork Mockups:
   a. One 10-foot section each of rectangular and round straight duct.
   b. One each of a 90-degree mitered round and rectangular elbow, and one each of a 90-degree radius round and rectangular elbow.
   c. One rectangular branch takeoff and one round branch takeoff from a rectangular duct. One round tee fitting.
   d. One rectangular and round transition fitting.
   e. Four support hangers for round and rectangular ductwork.
   f. Each type of damper and specialty.
2. For each mockup, fabricate cutaway sections to allow observation of application details for insulation materials, adhesives, mastics, attachments, and jackets.
3. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
4. Obtain Architect's approval of mockups before starting insulation application.
5. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
6. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
7. Demolish and remove mockups when directed.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 23 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

B. Coordinate clearance requirements with duct Installer for duct insulation application. Before preparing ductwork Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

1.8 SCHEDULING

A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.

B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

A. Comply with requirements in "Duct Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule," and "Aboveground, Outdoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.

B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.

C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.

D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.

E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.

F. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type II for sheet materials.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.
   b. Armacell LLC.
   c. Or Equal.

G. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type II with factory-applied vinyl jacket Type III with factory-applied FSK jacket or Type III with factory-applied FSP jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. CertainTeed Corporation.
   b. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
   c. Knauf Insulation.
   d. Manson Insulation Inc.
   e. Or Equal.
   f. Owens Corning.

H. Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type IA or Type IB. For duct and plenum applications, provide insulation with factory-applied ASJ or with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. CertainTeed Corporation.
   b. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
   c. Knauf Insulation.
   d. Manson Insulation Inc.
   e. Or Equal.
   f. Owens Corning.

I. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe and Tank Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Semirigid board material with factory-applied ASJ or FSK jacket complying with ASTM C 1393, Type II or Type IIIA Category 2, or with properties similar to ASTM C 612, Type IB. Nominal density is 2.5 lb./cu. ft. or more. Thermal conductivity (k-value) at 100 deg. F is 0.29 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg. F or less. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. CertainTeed Corporation.
   b. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
   c. Knauf Insulation.
   d. Manson Insulation Inc.
   e. Or Equal.
   f. Owens Corning.

2.2 ADHESIVES

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.

B. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
   b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries.
   c. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
   d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.
   e. Or Equal.

C. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
   b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries.
   c. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
   d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.

D. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Dow Corning Corporation.
   b. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
   c. Or Equal.

2.3 MASTICS

A. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
   b. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
   c. Knauf Insulation.
   d. Or Equal.
2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg. F.
4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
5. Color: White.

B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for outdoor use on below ambient services.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
   b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries.
   c. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
   d. Or Equal.
2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm at 30-mil dry film thickness.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 220 deg. F.
4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 33 percent by volume and 46 percent by weight.
5. Color: White.

C. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above ambient services.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
   b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries.
   c. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
   d. Knauf Insulation.
   e. Or Equal.
2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 1.8 perms at 0.0625-inch dry film thickness.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg. F.
4. Solids Content: 60 percent by volume and 66 percent by weight.
5. Color: White.

2.4 LAGGING ADHESIVES

A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
   b. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
   c. Or Equal.
2. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over duct insulation.
3. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg. F.
4. Color: White.

2.5 SEALANTS

A. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
   b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries.
   c. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
   d. Or Equal.
2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg. F.
5. Color: Aluminum.

B. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
   b. Or Equal.
2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg. F.
5. Color: White.

2.6 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:

1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
4. FSP Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with polyethylene backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
5. Vinyl Jacket: White vinyl with a permeance of 1.3 perms when tested according to ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure A, and complying with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.

2.7 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.

B. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil-face, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing.

C. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
   a. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
   b. Or Equal.
2. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
3. Color: White.

D. Metal Jacket:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. ITW Insulation Systems; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
   b. Or Equal.
   c. RPR Products, Inc.
2. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.
   a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing.
   b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
   c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper or 2.5-mil-thick polysurlyn.
   d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper or 2.5-mil-thick polysurlyn.

2.8 TAPES

A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division.
b. Ideal Tape Co., Inc., an American Biltrite Company.
c. Knauf Insulation.
d. Or Equal.

2. Width: 3 inches.
3. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
4. Adhesion: 90 ounces' force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 2 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.

B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division.
   b. Ideal Tape Co., Inc., an American Biltrite Company.
   c. Knauf Insulation.
   d. Or Equal.
2. Width: 3 inches.
3. Thickness: 6.5 mils.
4. Adhesion: 90 ounces' force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 2 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
7. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.

C. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Ideal Tape Co., Inc., an American Biltrite Company.
   b. Or Equal.
   c. Venture Tape.
2. Width: 2 inches.
3. Thickness: 6 mils.
4. Adhesion: 64 ounces' force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 500 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch in width.

D. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division.

b. Ideal Tape Co., Inc., an American Biltrite Company.
c. Knauf Insulation.
d. Or Equal.

2. Width: 2 inches.
3. Thickness: 3.7 mils.
4. Adhesion: 100 ounces' force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 5 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch in width.

2.9 SECUREMENTS

A. Bands:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. ITW Insulation Systems; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
   b. Or Equal.
   c. RPR Products, Inc.

2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 or Type 316; 0.015-inch-thick, 1/2 inch 3/4 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.
3. Aluminum: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020-inch-thick, 3/4 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.
4. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel with ends flat and slotted to accept metal bands. Spring size determined by manufacturer for application.

B. Insulation Pins and Hangers:

1. Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.135-inch-diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
   a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      1) Hardcast, Inc.
      2) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.
      3) Nelson Stud Welding.
      4) Or Equal.
2. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.135-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.
   a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1) Gemco.
2) Hardcast, Inc.
3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.
4) Nelson Stud Welding.
5) Or Equal.

3. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick, galvanized-steel or aluminum, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
   a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      1) Gemco.
      2) Hardcast, Inc.
      3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.
      4) Nelson Stud Welding.
      5) Or Equal.
   b. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.

C. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch-wide, stainless steel or Monel.

D. Wire: 0.062-inch soft-annealed, stainless steel.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
   a. C & F Wire.
   b. Or Equal.

2.10 CORNER ANGLES

A. PVC Corner Angles: 30 mils thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, PVC according to ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C. White or color-coded to match adjacent surface.

B. Aluminum Corner Angles: 0.040 inch thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, aluminum according to ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14.

C. Stainless-Steel Corner Angles: 0.024 inch thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, stainless steel according to ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 or Type 316.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.

1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of ducts and fittings.

B. Install insulation materials, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of duct system as specified in insulation system schedules.

C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.

D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.

E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.

F. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.

G. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.

H. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.

I. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
   1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
   2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
   3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.

J. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.

K. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:

   1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
   2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch-wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
   3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 4 inches o.c.
      a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
   4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
   5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to duct flanges and fittings.

L. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.

M. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.

N. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

3.4 PENETRATIONS

A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
   1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
   2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
   3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
   4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.

   1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
   2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
   3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
   4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.

D. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves for fire-rated wall and partition penetrations. Externally insulate damper sleeves to match adjacent insulation and overlap duct insulation at least 2 inches.

   1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

E. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:

   1. Duct: For penetrations through fire-rated assemblies, terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves and externally insulate damper sleeve beyond floor to match adjacent duct insulation. Overlap damper sleeve and duct insulation at least 2 inches.

2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.5 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

A. Blanket Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.

1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
   a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches' maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
   b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, place pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches' maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
   c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
   d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
   e. Impale insulation over pins and attach speed washers.
   f. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1-inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
   a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.

b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg. F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches.

5. Overlap unfaced blankets a minimum of 2 inches on longitudinal seams and end joints. At end joints, secure with steel bands spaced a maximum of 18 inches o.c.
6. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
7. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch-wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.

B. Board Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.

1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
   a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches' maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
   b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, space pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches' maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
   c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
   d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
   e. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2

inches from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1-inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.

a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg. F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches.

5. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Groove and score insulation to fit as closely as possible to outside and inside radius of elbows. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
6. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch-wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.

3.7 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.
   1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch overlap at seams and joints.
   2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch-thick coats of lagging adhesive.
   3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.

B. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:

   1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
   2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
   3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
   4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch-wide joint strips at end joints.
   5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.

C. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints; for horizontal applications, install with longitudinal seams along top and bottom of tanks and vessels. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
   1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.

D. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

3.8 FINISHES

A. Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."

   1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
      a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.

B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.

C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.

D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

3.9 DUCT INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

A. Plenums and Ducts Requiring Insulation:

   1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
   2. Indoor, exposed supply and outdoor air.
   3. Indoor, concealed return located in unconditioned space.
   4. Indoor, exposed return located in unconditioned space.
   5. Indoor, concealed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
   6. Indoor, exposed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
   7. Outdoor, concealed supply and return.

8. Outdoor, exposed supply and return.

B. Items Not Insulated:

1. Metal ducts with duct liner of sufficient thickness to comply with energy code and ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
2. Factory-insulated flexible ducts.
3. Factory-insulated plenums and casings.
4. Flexible connectors.
5. Vibration-control devices.
6. Factory-insulated access panels and doors.

3.10 INDOOR DUCT AND PLENUM INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Concealed, round and flat-oval, supply-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: to meet requirements of IECC-2015.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: to meet requirements of IECC-2015.

B. Concealed, round and flat-oval, outdoor-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: to meet requirements of IECC-2015.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: to meet requirements of IECC-2015.

C. Concealed, rectangular, supply-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: to meet requirements of IECC-2015.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: to meet requirements of IECC-2015.

D. Concealed, rectangular, outdoor-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: to meet requirements of IECC-2015.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: to meet requirements of IECC-2015.

E. Concealed, outdoor-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: to meet requirements of IECC-2015.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: to meet requirements of IECC-2015.

F. Exposed, round and flat-oval, supply-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: to meet requirements of IECC-2015

2. Mineral-Fiber Board: to meet requirements of IECC-2015.

G. Exposed, round and flat-oval, outdoor-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: to meet requirements of IECC-2015.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: to meet requirements of IECC-2015.

H. Exposed, rectangular, supply-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: to meet requirements of IECC-2015.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: to meet requirements of IECC-2015.

I. Exposed, rectangular, outdoor-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: to meet requirements of IECC-2015.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: to meet requirements of IECC-2015.

J. Exposed, supply-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 3 inches and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 3 inches thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

K. Exposed, outdoor-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: to meet requirements of IECC-2015.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: to meet requirements of IECC-2015.

3.11 ABOVEGROUND, OUTDOOR DUCT AND PLENUM INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Insulation materials and thicknesses are identified below. If more than one material is listed for a duct system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

B. Exposed, round and flat-oval, supply-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 3 inches and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 3 inches thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

C. Exposed, round and flat-oval, return-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 3 inches and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 3 inches thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

D. Exposed, rectangular, supply-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 3 inches and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 3 inches thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

E. Exposed, rectangular, return-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 3 inches and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 3 inches thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

F. Exposed, supply-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 3 inches and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

G. Mineral-Fiber Board: 3 inches thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density
Exposed, return-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 3 inches and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

******END OF SECTION******

SECTION 230719
HVAC PIPING INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes insulating the following HVAC piping systems:

1. Heating hot-water piping, indoors.
2. Condensate drain piping, indoors.
3. Refrigerant suction and hot-gas piping, indoors and outdoors.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 23 07 13 "Duct Insulation."

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied if any).

B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
2. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation.
3. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
4. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
5. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties.
6. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
7. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.

B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.

C. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.

B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 23 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

1.8 SCHEDULING

A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.

B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule," and "Outdoor, Aboveground Piping Insulation Schedule articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.

B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.

C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.

D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.

E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.

F. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.
   b. Armacell LLC.
   c. Or Equal.

G. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type II with factory-applied vinyl jacket III with factory-applied FSK jacket or III with factory-applied FSP jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. CertainTeed Corporation.
   b. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
   c. Knauf Insulation.
   d. Manson Insulation Inc.
   e. Owens Corning.

H. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
   b. Knauf Insulation.
   c. Manson Insulation Inc.
   d. Owens Corning.
2. Type I, 850 deg. F Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ or with factory-applied ASJ-SSL. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
3. Type II, 1200 deg. F Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type II, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ or with factory-applied ASJ-SSL. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

2.2 INSULATING CEMENTS

A. Mineral-Fiber Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 195.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Or Equal.
   b. Ramco Insulation, Inc.

B. Mineral-Fiber, Hydraulic-Setting Insulating and Finishing Cement: Comply with ASTM C 449.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Or Equal.
   b. Ramco Insulation, Inc.

2.3 ADHESIVES

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.

B. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries.
    c. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.

C. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK and PVDC Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries.
    c. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.

D. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    a. Dow Corning Corporation.
    b. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.

2.4 MASTICS

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.

B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    b. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    c. Knauf Insulation.
2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.

3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg. F.
4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
5. Color: White.

C. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above-ambient services.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
   b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries.
   c. Knauf Insulation.
2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 1.8 perms at 0.0625-inch dry film thickness.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg. F.
4. Solids Content: 60 percent by volume and 66 percent by weight.
5. Color: White.

2.5 LAGGING ADHESIVES

A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
   b. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
2. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over pipe insulation.
3. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg. F.
4. Color: White.

2.6 SEALANTS

A. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
   b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries.
   c. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg. F.

5. Color: Aluminum.

B. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl, PVDC, and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
   a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg. F.
5. Color: White.

2.7 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:

1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
4. FSP Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with polyethylene backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
5. PVDC Jacket for Indoor Applications: 4-mil-thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.02 perm when tested according to ASTM E 96/E 96M and with a flame-spread index of 5 and a smoke-developed index of 20 when tested according to ASTM E 84.
   a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      1) ITW Insulation Systems; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
      2) Or Equal.
6. PVDC Jacket for Outdoor Applications: 6-mil-thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.01 perm when tested according to ASTM E 96/E 96M and with a flame-spread index of 5 and a smoke-developed index of 25 when tested according to ASTM E 84.
   a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      1) ITW Insulation Systems; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.

7. PVDC-SSL Jacket: PVDC jacket with a self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip.
    a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
        1) ITW Insulation Systems; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
        2) Or Equal.
8. Vinyl Jacket: White vinyl with a permeance of 1.3 perms when tested according to ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure A, and complying with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.

2.8 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.

B. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil-face, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing.

C. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    a. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
    b. Or Equal.
    c. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.
    d. Speedline Corporation.
2. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
3. Color: White.
4. Factory-fabricated fitting covers to match jacket if available; otherwise, field fabricate.
    a. Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap and supply covers for lavatories.

D. Metal Jacket:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    a. ITW Insulation Systems; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
    b. Or Equal.

2. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.
    a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing.
    b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
    c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 3-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
    d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
    e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
        1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
        2) Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
        3) Tee covers.
        4) Flange and union covers.
        5) End caps.
        6) Beveled collars.
        7) Valve covers.
        8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.

E. Self-Adhesive Outdoor Jacket: 60-mil-thick, laminated vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane for installation over insulation located aboveground outdoors; consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin on a cross-laminated polyethylene film covered with stucco-embossed aluminum-foil facing.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    a. Or Equal.
    b. Polyguard Products, Inc.

F. PVDC Jacket for Indoor Applications: 4-mil-thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.02 perms when tested according to ASTM E 96/E 96M and with a flame-spread index of 5 and a smoke-developed index of 20 when tested according to ASTM E 84.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    a. ITW Insulation Systems; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
    b. Or Equal.

G. PVDC Jacket for Outdoor Applications: 6-mil-thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.01 perms when tested according to ASTM E 96/E 96M and with a flame-spread index of 5 and a smoke-developed index of 25 when tested according to ASTM E 84.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. ITW Insulation Systems; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
   b. Or Equal.

H. PVDC-SSL Jacket: PVDC jacket with a self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. ITW Insulation Systems; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
   b. Or Equal.

2.9 TAPES

A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division.
   b. Compac Corporation.
   c. Knauf Insulation.
   d. Or Equal.
2. Width: 3 inches.
3. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
4. Adhesion: 90 ounces' force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 2 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 40 lb./inch in width.
7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.

B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division.
   b. Ideal Tape Co., Inc., an American Biltrite Company.
   c. Knauf Insulation.
   d. Or Equal.
2. Width: 3 inches.
3. Thickness: 6.5 mils.
4. Adhesion: 90 ounces' force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 2 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
7. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.

C. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Compac Corporation.
   b. Ideal Tape Co., Inc., an American Biltrite Company.
   c. Or Equal.
2. Width: 2 inches.
3. Thickness: 6 mils.
4. Adhesion: 64 ounces' force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 500 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch in width.

D. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division.
   b. Ideal Tape Co., Inc., an American Biltrite Company.
   c. Knauf Insulation.
   d. Or Equal.
2. Width: 2 inches.
3. Thickness: 3.7 mils.
4. Adhesion: 100 ounces' force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 5 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch in width.

E. PVDC Tape for Indoor Applications: White vapor-retarder PVDC tape with acrylic adhesive.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. ITW Insulation Systems; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
   b. Or Equal.
2. Width: 3 inches.
3. Film Thickness: 4 mils.
4. Adhesive Thickness: 1.5 mils.
5. Elongation at Break: 145 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 55 lbf/inch in width.

F. PVDC Tape for Outdoor Applications: White vapor-retarder PVDC tape with acrylic adhesive.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. ITW Insulation Systems; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
b. Or Equal.

2. Width: 3 inches.
3. Film Thickness: 6 mils.
4. Adhesive Thickness: 1.5 mils.
5. Elongation at Break: 145 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 55 lbf/inch in width.

2.10 SECUREMENTS

A. Bands:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. ITW Insulation Systems; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
   b. Or Equal.
   c. RPR Products, Inc.
2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 or Type 316; 0.015-inch-thick, 1/2-inch 3/4-inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.
3. Aluminum: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020-inch-thick, 3/4-inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.
4. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel with ends flat and slotted to accept metal bands. Spring size determined by manufacturer for application.

B. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch-wide,

C. Wire: 0.062-inch soft-annealed, stainless steel.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. C & F Wire.
   b. Or Equal.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.

1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.

2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

B. Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated. Before insulating, apply a corrosion coating to insulated surfaces as follows:

1. Stainless Steel: Coat 300 series stainless steel with an epoxy primer 5 mils thick and an epoxy finish 5 mils thick if operating in a temperature range between 140 and 300 deg. F. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.

2. Carbon Steel: Coat carbon steel operating at a service temperature between 32 and 300 deg. F with an epoxy coating. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.

C. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.

D. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.

B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.

C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.

D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.

E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.

F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.

G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.

H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.

I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.

J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.

1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.

2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.

K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.

L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:

1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch-wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 4 inches o.c.

a. For below-ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.

4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.

M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.

N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.

O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

P. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:

1. Vibration-control devices.
2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
3. Nameplates and data plates.
4. Manholes.
5. Handholes.
6. Cleanouts.

3.4 PENETRATIONS

A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.

1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.

1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.

4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.

D. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.

E. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.

1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.

F. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:

1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.5 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.

B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:

1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.
2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth,

hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.

3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below-ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
9. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union." Match size and color of pipe labels.

C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.

D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:
   1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.
   2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
   3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges, except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
   4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
   5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

   1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
   2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
   3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
   4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

   1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.

2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward-clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1-inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.8 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

A. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:

1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch-wide joint strips at end joints.
5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.

B. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints; for horizontal applications. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.

1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.

C. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

D. Where PVDC jackets are indicated, install as follows:

1. Apply three separate wraps of filament tape per insulation section to secure pipe insulation to pipe prior to installation of PVDC jacket.
2. Wrap factory-presized jackets around individual pipe insulation sections with one end overlapping the previously installed sheet. Install presized jacket with an approximate overlap at butt joint of 2 inches over the previous section. Adhere lap seal using adhesive or SSL, and then apply 1-1/4 circumferences of appropriate PVDC tape around overlapped butt joint.
3. Continuous jacket can be spiral-wrapped around a length of pipe insulation. Apply adhesive or PVDC tape at overlapped spiral edge. When electing to use adhesives, refer to manufacturer's written instructions for application of adhesives along this spiral edge to maintain a permanent bond.
4. Jacket can be wrapped in cigarette fashion along length of roll for insulation systems with an outer circumference of 33-1/2 inches or less. The 33-1/2-inch-circumference limit allows for 2-inch-overlap seal. Using the length of roll allows for longer sections of jacket to be installed at one time. Use adhesive on the lap seal. Visually inspect lap seal for "fishmouthing," and use PVDC tape along lap seal to secure joint.
5. Repair holes or tears in PVDC jacket by placing PVDC tape over the hole or tear and wrapping a minimum of 1-1/4 circumferences to avoid damage to tape edges.

3.9 FINISHES

A. Pipe Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."

1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
   a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.

B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.

C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.

D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

3.10 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:

1. Drainage piping located in crawl spaces.
2. Underground piping.
3. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.

3.11 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Heating-Hot-Water Supply and Return, 200 Deg. F and Below:

1. NPS 12 and Smaller: Insulation shall be:
   a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I: thickness to meet energy IECC-2015.

B. Condensate Drain Piping:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
   a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I: 1-inch thick.

C. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Piping:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
   a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1-inch thick.

D. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Flexible Tubing:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
   a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1-inch thick.

******END OF SECTION******

SECTION 232113
HYDRONIC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. Related Sections:
Section 230529 – HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT
Section 230548 – VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR HVAC
Section 230553 – IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes pipe and fitting materials and joining methods for the following:

1. Copper tube and fittings.
2. Steel pipe and fittings.
3. Joining materials.
4. Transition fittings.
5. Dielectric fittings.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of the following:

1. Pipe.
2. Fittings.
3. Joining materials.
4. Bypass chemical feeder.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Piping layout, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Suspended ceiling components.

2. Other building services.
3. Structural members.

B. Qualification Data: For Installer.

C. Welding certificates.

D. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications:

1. Installers of Pressure-Sealed Joints: Installers shall be certified by pressure-seal joint manufacturer as having been trained and qualified to join piping with pressure-seal pipe couplings and fittings.
2. Fiberglass Pipe and Fitting Installers: Installers of RTRF and RTRP shall be certified by manufacturer of pipes and fittings as having been trained and qualified to join fiberglass piping with manufacturer-recommended adhesive.

B. Steel Support Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

C. Pipe Welding: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.

1. Comply with ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," for materials, products, and installation.
2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Hydronic piping components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure and temperature unless otherwise indicated:

1. Hot-Water Heating Piping: 150 psig at 200 deg. F.
2. Makeup-Water Piping: 80 psig at 150 deg. F.
3. Condensate-Drain Piping: 150 deg. F.
4. Air-Vent Piping: 200 deg. F.

5. Safety-Valve-Inlet and -Outlet Piping: Equal to the pressure of the piping system to which it is attached.

2.2 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

A. Drawn-Temper Copper Tubing: ASTM B 88, Type L.

B. Annealed-Temper Copper Tubing: ASTM B 88, Type K.

C. DWV Copper Tubing: ASTM B 306, Type DWV.

D. Grooved, Mechanical-Joint, Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Anvil International.
   b. Star Pipe Products.
   c. Victaulic Company.
2. Grooved-End Copper Fittings: ASTM B 75, copper tube or ASTM B 584, bronze casting.
3. Grooved-End-Tube Couplings: Rigid pattern unless otherwise indicated; gasketed fitting. Ductile-iron housing with keys matching pipe and fitting grooves, prelubricated EPDM gasket rated for minimum 230 deg. F for use with housing, and steel bolts and nuts.

E. Copper or Bronze Pressure-Seal Fittings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Elkhart Products Corporation.
   b. Mueller Industries, Inc.
   c. NIBCO INC.
   d. Viega LLC.
2. Housing: Copper.
3. O-Rings and Pipe Stops: EPDM.
4. Tools: Manufacturer's special tools.
5. Minimum 200-psig working-pressure rating at 250 deg. F.

F. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.

2.3 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel with plain ends; welded and seamless, Grade B, and wall thickness as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.

B. Cast-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4; Classes 125 and 250 as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.

C. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Classes 150 and 300 as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.

D. Malleable-Iron Unions: ASME B16.39; Classes 150, 250, and 300 as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.

E. Cast-Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.1, Classes 25, 125, and 250; raised ground face, and bolt holes spot faced as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.

F. Wrought-Steel Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M, wall thickness to match adjoining pipe.

G. Wrought Cast- and Forged-Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets of the following material group, end connections, and facings:

1. Material Group: 1.1.
2. End Connections: Butt welding.
3. Facings: Raised face.

H. Grooved Mechanical-Joint Fittings and Couplings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Victaulic Company.
   b. Grinnell Mechanical Products.

2. Joint Fittings: ASTM A 536, Grade 65-45-12 ductile iron; ASTM A 47/A 47M, Grade 32510 malleable iron; ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type F, E, or S, Grade B fabricated steel; or ASTM A 106/A 106M, Grade B steel fittings with grooves or shoulders constructed to accept grooved-end couplings; with nuts, bolts, locking pin, locking toggle, or lugs to secure grooved pipe and fittings.

3. Couplings: Ductile- or malleable-iron housing and EPDM gasket of central cavity pressure-responsive design; with nuts, bolts, locking pin, locking toggle, or lugs to secure grooved pipe and fittings.

I. Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of same materials and wall thicknesses as pipe in which they are installed.

2.4 JOINING MATERIALS

A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.

1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless otherwise indicated.
    a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
    b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.

B. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.

D. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for joining copper with copper; or BAg-1, silver alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.

E. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12M/D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

2.5 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.

B. Dielectric Unions:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    a. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
    b. Central Plastics Company.
    c. Matco-Norca.
    d. WATTS.
    e. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Description:
    a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
    b. Pressure Rating: 250 psig.
    c. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

C. Dielectric Flanges:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
   b. WATTS.
   c. Wilkins.
   d. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Description:
   a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
   b. Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
   c. Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
   d. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS

A. Hot-water heating piping, aboveground, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be the following:

1. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered or pressure-seal joints.

B. Hot-water heating piping, aboveground, NPS 2-1/2 and larger, shall be one of the following:

1. Schedule 40 steel pipe, wrought-steel fittings and wrought-cast or forged-steel flanges and flange fittings, and welded and flanged joints.
2. Schedule 40 steel pipe; grooved, mechanical joint coupling and fittings; and grooved, mechanical joints.

C. Makeup-water piping installed aboveground shall be the following:

1. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints.

D. Condensate-Drain Piping: Type M, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints.

E. Air-Vent Piping:

1. Inlet: Same as service where installed with metal-to-plastic transition fittings for plastic piping systems according to piping manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Outlet: Type K, annealed-temper copper tubing with soldered or flared joints.

F. Safety-Valve-Inlet and -Outlet Piping for Hot-Water Piping: Same materials and joining methods as for piping specified for the service in which safety valve is installed with metal-to-plastic transition fittings for plastic piping systems according to piping manufacturer's written instructions.

3.2 PIPING INSTALLATIONS

A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.

B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.

C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.

D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.

E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.

F. Install piping at indicated slopes.

G. Install piping free of sags and bends.

H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

J. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.

K. Install groups of pipes parallel to each other, spaced to permit applying insulation and servicing of valves.

L. Install drains, consisting of a tee fitting, NPS 3/4 ball valve, and short NPS 3/4 threaded nipple with cap, at low points in piping system mains and elsewhere as required for system drainage.

M. Install piping at a uniform grade of 0.2 percent upward in direction of flow.

N. Reduce pipe sizes using eccentric reducer fitting installed with level side up.

O. Install branch connections to mains using mechanically formed tee fittings in main pipe, with the branch connected to the bottom of the main pipe. For up-feed risers, connect the branch to the top of the main pipe.

P. Install unions in piping, NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to valves, at final connections of equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.

Q. Install shutoff valve immediately upstream of each dielectric fitting.

R. Comply with requirements in Section 23 05 53 – IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT for identifying piping.

3.3 DIELECTRIC FITTING INSTALLATION

A. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.

B. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Use dielectric unions.

3.4 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Comply with requirements in Section 230529 – HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT for hanger, support, and anchor devices. Comply with the following requirements for maximum spacing of supports.

B. Comply with requirements in Section 230548 – VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR HVAC for seismic restraints.

C. Install the following pipe attachments:

1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal piping less than 20 feet long.
2. Adjustable roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal piping 20 feet or longer.
3. Pipe Roller: MSS SP-58, Type 44 for multiple horizontal piping 20 feet or longer, supported on a trapeze.
4. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
5. Provide copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.

6. On plastic pipe, install pads or cushions on bearing surfaces to prevent hanger from scratching pipe.

D. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:

1. NPS 3/4: Maximum span, 7 feet.
2. NPS 1: Maximum span, 7 feet.
3. NPS 1-1/2: Maximum span, 9 feet.
4. NPS 2: Maximum span, 10 feet.
5. NPS 2-1/2: Maximum span, 11 feet.
6. NPS 3 and Larger: Maximum span, 12 feet.

E. Install hangers for drawn-temper copper piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:

1. NPS 3/4: Maximum span, 5 feet; minimum rod size, ¼-inch.
2. NPS 1: Maximum span, 6 feet; minimum rod size, ¼-inch.
3. NPS 1-1/4Maximum span, 7 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8-inch.
4. NPS 1-1/2: Maximum span, 8 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8-inch.
5. NPS 2: Maximum span, 8 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8-inch.
6. NPS 2-1/2: Maximum span, 9 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8-inch.
7. NPS 3 and Larger: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8-inch.

F. Support vertical runs at roof, at each floor, and at 10-foot intervals between floors.

3.5 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.

B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.

C. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.

D. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8/A5.8M.

E. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream

threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:

1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.

F. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12M/D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to "Quality Assurance" Article.

G. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.

H. Grooved Joints: Assemble joints with coupling and gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Cut or roll grooves in ends of pipe based on pipe and coupling manufacturer's written instructions for pipe wall thickness. Use grooved-end fittings and rigid, grooved-end-pipe couplings.

I. Mechanically Formed, Copper-Tube-Outlet Joints: Use manufacturer-recommended tool and procedure, and brazed joints.

J. Pressure-Sealed Joints: Use manufacturer-recommended tool and procedure. Leave insertion marks on pipe after assembly.

3.6 TERMINAL EQUIPMENT CONNECTIONS

A. Sizes for supply and return piping connections shall be the same as or larger than equipment connections.

B. Install control valves in accessible locations close to connected equipment.

C. Install bypass piping with globe valve around control valve. If parallel control valves are installed, only one bypass is required.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Prepare hydronic piping according to ASME B31.9 and as follows:

1. Leave joints, including welds, uninsulated and exposed for examination during test.

2. Provide temporary restraints for expansion joints that cannot sustain reactions due to test pressure. If temporary restraints are impractical, isolate expansion joints from testing.
3. Flush hydronic piping systems with clean water; then remove and clean or replace strainer screens.
4. Isolate equipment from piping. If a valve is used to isolate equipment, its closure shall be capable of sealing against test pressure without damage to valve. Install blinds in flanged joints to isolate equipment.
5. Install safety valve, set at a pressure no more than one-third higher than test pressure, to protect against damage by expanding liquid or other source of overpressure during test.

B. Perform the following tests on hydronic piping:

1. Use ambient temperature water as a testing medium unless there is risk of damage due to freezing. Another liquid that is safe for workers and compatible with piping may be used.
2. While filling system, use vents installed at high points of system to release air. Use drains installed at low points for complete draining of test liquid.
3. Isolate expansion tanks and determine that hydronic system is full of water.
4. Subject piping system to hydrostatic test pressure that is not less than 1.5 times the system's working pressure. Test pressure shall not exceed maximum pressure for any vessel, pump, valve, or other component in system under test. Verify that stress due to pressure at bottom of vertical runs does not exceed 90 percent of specified minimum yield strength or 1.7 times the "SE" value in Appendix A in ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping."
5. After hydrostatic test pressure has been applied for at least 10 minutes, examine piping, joints, and connections for leakage. Eliminate leaks by tightening, repairing, or replacing components, and repeat hydrostatic test until there are no leaks.
6. Prepare written report of testing.

C. Perform the following before operating the system:

1. Open manual valves fully.
2. Inspect pumps for proper rotation.
3. Set makeup pressure-reducing valves for required system pressure.
4. Inspect air vents at high points of system and determine if all are installed and operating freely (automatic type), or bleed air completely (manual type).
5. Set temperature controls so all coils are calling for full flow.

6. Inspect and set operating temperatures of hydronic equipment, such as boilers, chillers, cooling towers, to specified values.
7. Verify lubrication of motors and bearings.

******END OF SECTION******

SECTION 232116
HYDRONIC PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes special-duty valves and specialties for the following:

1. Hydronic specialty valves.
2. Air-control devices.
3. Strainers.
4. Connectors.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of the following:

1. Hydronic Specialty Valves: Include flow and pressure drop curves based on manufacturer's testing for calibrated-orifice balancing valves and automatic flow-control valves.
2. Air-control devices.
3. Strainers.
4. Connectors.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air-control devices, hydronic specialties, and special-duty valves to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Differential Pressure Meter: For each type of balancing valve and automatic flow control valve, include flowmeter, probes, hoses, flow charts, and carrying case.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Pipe Welding: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.

1. Safety valves and pressure vessels shall bear the appropriate ASME label. Fabricate and stamp air separators and expansion tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 HYDRONIC SPECIALTY VALVES

A. Bronze, Calibrated-Orifice, Balancing Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
   b. Bell & Gossett; a Xylem brand.
   c. Grinnell Mechanical Products.
   d. Griswold Controls.
   e. Nexus Valve, Inc.
   f. NIBCO INC.
   g. TACO Comfort Solutions, Inc.
   h. Victaulic Company.
2. Body: Bronze, ball or plug type with calibrated orifice or venturi.
3. Ball: Brass or stainless steel.
4. Plug: Resin.
5. Seat: PTFE.
6. End Connections: Threaded or socket.
7. Pressure Gage Connections: Integral seals for portable differential pressure meter.
8. Handle Style: Lever, with memory stop to retain set position.
9. CWP Rating: Minimum 125 psig.
10. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg. F.

B. Cast-Iron or Steel, Calibrated-Orifice, Balancing Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
   b. Bell & Gossett; a Xylem brand.
   c. Grinnell Mechanical Products.
   d. Griswold Controls.
   e. Nexus Valve, Inc.

f. NIBCO INC.
g. TACO Comfort Solutions, Inc.
h. Victaulic Company.

2. Body: Cast-iron or steel body, ball, plug, or globe pattern with calibrated orifice or venturi.
3. Ball: Brass or stainless steel.
4. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
5. Disc: Glass and carbon-filled PTFE.
6. Seat: PTFE.
7. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.
8. Pressure Gage Connections: Integral seals for portable differential pressure meter.
9. Handle Style: Lever, with memory stop to retain set position.
10. CWP Rating: Minimum 125 psig.
11. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg. F.

C. Diaphragm-Operated, Pressure-Reducing Valves: ASME labeled.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
   b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
   c. Bell & Gossett; a Xylem brand.
   d. WATTS.
2. Body: Bronze or brass.
3. Disc: Glass and carbon-filled PTFE.
4. Seat: Brass.
5. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
6. Diaphragm: EPT.
7. Low inlet-pressure check valve.
8. Inlet Strainer: , removable without system shutdown.
9. Valve Seat and Stem: Noncorrosive.
10. Valve Size, Capacity, and Operating Pressure: Selected to suit system in which installed, with operating pressure and capacity factory set and field adjustable.

D. Diaphragm-Operated Safety Valves: ASME labeled.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. AMTROL, Inc.
   b. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
   c. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
   d. Bell & Gossett; a Xylem brand.
   e. Spence Engineering Company, Inc.
   f. WATTS.

2. Body: Bronze or brass.
3. Disc: Glass and carbon-filled PTFE.
4. Seat: Brass.
5. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
6. Diaphragm: EPT.
7. Wetted, Internal Work Parts: Brass and rubber.
8. Inlet Strainer: , removable without system shutdown.
9. Valve Seat and Stem: Noncorrosive.
10. Valve Size, Capacity, and Operating Pressure: Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IV, and selected to suit system in which installed, with operating pressure and capacity factory set and field adjustable.

E. Automatic Flow-Control Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Griswold Controls.
   b. Hays Fluid Controls.
   c. Nexus Valve, Inc.
   d. NIBCO INC.
2. Body: Brass or ferrous metal.
3. Piston and Spring Assembly: Stainless steel, tamper proof, self-cleaning, and removable.
4. Combination Assemblies: Include bronze or brass-alloy ball valve.
5. Identification Tag: Marked with zone identification, valve number, and flow rate.
6. Size: Same as pipe in which installed.
7. Performance: Maintain constant flow, plus or minus 5 percent over system pressure fluctuations.
8. Minimum CWP Rating: 175 psig.
9. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg. F.

2.2 AIR-CONTROL DEVICES

A. Manual Air Vents:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. AMTROL, Inc.
   b. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
   c. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
   d. Bell & Gossett; a Xylem brand.
   e. Nexus Valve, Inc.
   f. TACO Comfort Solutions, Inc.
2. Body: Bronze.

3. Internal Parts: Nonferrous.
4. Operator: Screwdriver or thumbscrew.
5. Inlet Connection: NPS 1/2.
6. Discharge Connection: NPS 1/8.
7. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 225 deg. F.

B. Automatic Air Vents:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. AMTROL, Inc.
   b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
   c. Bell & Gossett; a Xylem brand.
   d. Nexus Valve, Inc.
   e. Spirotherm, Inc.
   f. TACO Comfort Solutions, Inc.
2. Body: Bronze or cast iron.
3. Internal Parts: Nonferrous.
4. Operator: Noncorrosive metal float.
5. Inlet Connection: NPS 1/2.
6. Discharge Connection: NPS 1/4.
7. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg. F.

2.3 STRAINERS

A. Y-Pattern Strainers:

1. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B, cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
3. Strainer Screen: Stainless-steel, 40-mesh strainer, or perforated stainless-steel basket.
4. CWP Rating: 125 psig.

2.4 CONNECTORS

A. Stainless-Steel Bellow, Flexible Connectors:

1. Body: Stainless-steel bellows with woven, flexible, bronze, wire-reinforcing protective jacket.
2. End Connections: Threaded or flanged to match equipment connected.
3. Performance: Capable of 3/4-inch misalignment.

4. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg. F.

B. Spherical, Rubber, Flexible Connectors:

1. Body: Fiber-reinforced rubber body.
2. End Connections: Steel flanges drilled to align with Classes 150 and 300 steel flanges.
3. Performance: Capable of misalignment.
4. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg. F.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 VALVE APPLICATIONS;

A. Install shut off-duty valves at each branch connection to supply mains and at supply connection to each piece of equipment.

B. Install calibrated-orifice, balancing valves in the return pipe of each heating or cooling terminal.

C. Install check valves at each pump discharge and elsewhere as required to control flow direction.

D. Install safety valves at hot-water generators and elsewhere as required by ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Install drip-pan elbow on safety-valve outlet and pipe without valves to the outdoors; pipe drain to nearest floor drain or as indicated on Drawings. Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1, for installation requirements.

E. Install pressure-reducing valves at makeup-water connection to regulate system fill pressure.

3.2 HYDRONIC SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION

A. Install manual air vents at high points in piping, at heat-transfer coils, and elsewhere as required for system air venting.

B. Install automatic air vents at high points of system piping in mechanical equipment rooms only. Install manual vents at heat-transfer coils and elsewhere as required for air venting.

C. Install piping from boiler air outlet, air separator, or air purger to expansion tank with a 2 percent upward slope toward tank.

D. Install in-line air separators in pump suction. Install drain valve on air separators NPS 2 and larger.

E. Install tangential air separator in pump suction. Install blowdown piping with gate or full-port ball valve; extend full size to nearest floor drain.

F. Install expansion tanks above the air separator. Install tank fitting in tank bottom and charge tank. Use manual vent for initial fill to establish proper water level in tank.

1. Install tank fittings that are shipped loose.
2. Support tank from floor or structure above with sufficient strength to carry weight of tank, piping connections, fittings, plus tank full of water. Do not overload building components and structural members.

G. Install expansion tanks on the floor. Vent and purge air from hydronic system, and ensure that tank is properly charged with air to suit system Project requirements.

******END OF SECTION******

SECTION 232300
REFRIGERANT PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. Related Sections:
Section 230529 – HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT
Section 230553 – IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Refrigerant pipes and fittings.
2. Refrigerant piping valves and specialties.
3. Refrigerants.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of valve, refrigerant piping, and piping specialty.

1. Include pressure drop, based on manufacturer's test data, for the following:
   a. Thermostatic expansion valves.
   b. Solenoid valves.
   c. Hot-gas bypass valves.
   d. Filter dryers.
   e. Strainers.
   f. Pressure-regulating valves.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Show layout of refrigerant piping and specialties, including pipe, tube, and fitting sizes; flow capacities; valve arrangements and locations; slopes of horizontal runs; oil traps; double risers; wall and floor penetrations; and equipment connection details.

2. Show piping size and piping layout, including oil traps, double risers, specialties, and pipe and tube sizes to accommodate, as a minimum, equipment provided, elevation difference between compressor and evaporator, and length of piping to ensure proper operation and compliance with warranties of connected equipment.
3. Show interface and spatial relationships between piping and equipment.
4. Shop Drawing Scale: 1/4-inch equals 1 foot.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Welding certificates.

B. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For refrigerant valves and piping specialties to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to 2010 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."

B. Comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Code for Refrigeration Systems."

C. Comply with ASME B31.5, "Refrigeration Piping and Heat Transfer Components."

1.7 PRODUCT STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Store piping with end caps in place to ensure that piping interior and exterior are clean when installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Line Test Pressure for Refrigerant R-410A:

1. Suction Lines for Air-Conditioning Applications: 300 psig.
2. Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: 535 psig.
3. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines: 535 psig.

2.2 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

A. Copper Tube: ASTM B 280, Type ACR.

B. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.

C. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.

D. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32. Use 95-5 tin antimony or alloy HB solder to join copper socket fittings on copper pipe.

E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M.

F. Flexible Connectors:

1. Body: Tin-bronze bellows with woven, flexible, tinned-bronze-wire-reinforced protective jacket.
2. End Connections: Socket ends.
3. Offset Performance: Capable of minimum 3/4-inch misalignment in minimum 7-inch-long assembly.
4. Working Pressure Rating: Factory test at minimum 500 psig.
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg. F.

2.3 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel with plain ends; type, grade, and wall thickness as selected in piping application articles.

B. Wrought-Steel Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M, for welded joints.

C. Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, steel, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets, bevel-welded end connection, and raised face.

D. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12M/D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

E. Flanged Unions:

1. Body: Forged-steel flanges for NPS 1 to NPS 1-1/2 and ductile iron for NPS 2 to NPS 3. Apply rust-resistant finish at factory.
2. Gasket: Fiber asbestos free.
3. Fasteners: Four plated-steel bolts, with silicon bronze nuts. Apply rust-resistant finish at factory.
4. End Connections: Brass tailpiece adapters for solder-end connections to copper tubing.

5. Offset Performance: Capable of minimum 3/4-inch misalignment in minimum 7-inch-long assembly.
6. Pressure Rating: Factory test at minimum 400 psig.
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 330 deg. F.

F. Flexible Connectors:

1. Body: Stainless-steel bellows with woven, flexible, stainless-steel-wire-reinforced protective jacket.
2. End Connections:
   a. NPS 2 and Smaller: With threaded-end connections.
   b. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: With flanged-end connections.
3. Offset Performance: Capable of minimum 3/4-inch misalignment in minimum 7-inch-long assembly.
4. Pressure Rating: Factory test at minimum 500 psig.
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg. F.

2.4 VALVES AND SPECIALTIES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Danfoss Inc.
2. Heldon Products; Henry Technologies.
3. Parker Hannifin Corp.
4. Paul Mueller Company.

B. Diaphragm Packless Valves:

1. Body and Bonnet: Forged brass or cast bronze; globe design with straight-through or angle pattern.
2. Diaphragm: Phosphor bronze and stainless steel with stainless-steel spring.
3. Operator: Rising stem and hand wheel.
4. Seat: Nylon.
5. End Connections: Socket, union, or flanged.
6. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg. F.

C. Packed-Angle Valves:

1. Body and Bonnet: Forged brass or cast bronze.
2. Packing: Molded stem, back seating, and replaceable under pressure.
3. Operator: Rising stem.
4. Seat: Nonrotating, self-aligning polytetrafluoroethylene.

5. Seal Cap: Forged-brass or valox hex cap.
6. End Connections: Socket, union, threaded, or flanged.
7. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg. F.

D. Check Valves:

1. Body: Ductile iron, forged brass, or cast bronze; globe pattern.
2. Bonnet: Bolted ductile iron, forged brass, or cast bronze; or brass hex plug.
3. Piston: Removable polytetrafluoroethylene seat.
4. Closing Spring: Stainless steel.
5. Manual Opening Stem: Seal cap, plated-steel stem, and graphite seal.
6. End Connections: Socket, union, threaded, or flanged.
7. Maximum Opening Pressure: 0.50 psig.
8. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
9. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg. F.

E. Service Valves:

1. Body: Forged brass with brass cap including key end to remove core.
2. Core: Removable ball-type check valve with stainless-steel spring.
3. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
4. End Connections: Copper spring.
5. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.

F. Solenoid Valves: Comply with AHRI 760 and UL 429; listed and labeled by a National Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL).

1. Body and Bonnet: Plated steel.
2. Solenoid Tube, Plunger, Closing Spring, and Seat Orifice:Stainless steel.
3. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
4. End Connections: Threaded.
5. Electrical: Molded, watertight coil in NEMA 250 enclosure of type required by location with 1/2-inch conduit adapter, and 24-V ac coil.
6. Working Pressure Rating: 400 psig.
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg. F.

G. Safety Relief Valves: Comply with 2010 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
1. Body and Bonnet: Ductile iron and steel, with neoprene O-ring seal.

2. Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
3. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
4. End Connections: Threaded.
5. Working Pressure Rating: 400 psig.
6. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg. F.

H. Thermostatic Expansion Valves: Comply with AHRI 750.

1. Body, Bonnet, and Seal Cap: Forged brass or steel.
2. Diaphragm, Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
3. Packing and Gaskets: Non-asbestos.
4. Capillary and Bulb: Copper tubing filled with refrigerant charge.
5. Suction Temperature: 40 deg. F.
6. Superheat: Adjustable.
7. Reverse-flow option (for heat-pump applications).
8. End Connections: Socket, flare, or threaded union.
9. Working Pressure Rating: 700 psig.

I. Hot-Gas Bypass Valves: Comply with UL 429; listed and labeled by an NRTL.

1. Body, Bonnet, and Seal Cap: Ductile iron or steel.
2. Diaphragm, Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
3. Packing and Gaskets: Non-asbestos.
4. Solenoid Tube, Plunger, Closing Spring, and Seat Orifice: Stainless steel.
5. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
6. Equalizer: Internal External.
7. Electrical: Molded, watertight coil in NEMA 250 enclosure of type required by location with 1/2-inch conduit adapter and 24-V ac coil.
8. End Connections: Socket.
9. Throttling Range: Maximum 5 psig.
10. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
11. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg. F.

J. Straight-Type Strainers:

1. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
2. Screen: 100-mesh stainless steel.
3. End Connections: Socket or flare.
4. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg. F.

K. Angle-Type Strainers:

1. Body: Forged brass or cast bronze.
2. Drain Plug: Brass hex plug.
3. Screen: 100-mesh monel.
4. End Connections: Socket or flare.
5. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
6. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg. F.

L. Moisture/Liquid Indicators:

1. Body: Forged brass.
2. Window: Replaceable, clear, fused glass window with indicating element protected by filter screen.
3. Indicator: Color coded to show moisture content in parts per million (ppm).
4. Minimum Moisture Indicator Sensitivity: Indicate moisture above 60 ppm.
5. End Connections: Socket or flare.
6. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg. F.

M. Replaceable-Core Filter Dryers: Comply with AHRI 730.

1. Body and Cover: Painted-steel shell with ductile-iron cover, stainless-steel screws, and neoprene gaskets.
2. Filter Media: 10 micron, pleated with integral end rings; stainless-steel support.
3. Desiccant Media: Activated alumina.
4. Designed for reverse flow (for heat-pump applications).
5. End Connections: Socket.
6. Access Ports: NPS 1/4 connections at entering and leaving sides for pressure differential measurement.
7. Maximum Pressure Loss: 2 psig.
8. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
9. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg. F.

N. Permanent Filter Dryers: Comply with AHRI 730.

1. Body and Cover: Painted-steel shell.
2. Filter Media: 10 micron, pleated with integral end rings; stainless-steel support.
3. Desiccant Media: Activated alumina.
4. Designed for reverse flow (for heat-pump applications).
5. End Connections: Socket.
6. Access Ports: NPS 1/4 connections at entering and leaving sides for pressure differential measurement.

7. Maximum Pressure Loss: 2 psig.
8. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
9. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg. F.

O. Mufflers:

1. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
2. End Connections: Socket or flare.
3. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
4. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg. F.

P. Receivers: Comply with AHRI 495.

1. Comply with 2010 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
2. Comply with UL 207; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
3. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
4. Tappings: Inlet, outlet, liquid level indicator, and safety relief valve.
5. End Connections: Socket or threaded.
6. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg. F.

Q. Liquid Accumulators: Comply with AHRI 495.

1. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
2. End Connections: Socket or threaded.
3. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
4. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg. F.

2.5 REFRIGERANTS

A. ASHRAE 34, R-410A: Pentafluoroethane/Difluoromethane.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Arkema Inc.
   b. DuPont Fluorochemicals Div.
   c. Genetron Refrigerants; Honeywell International Inc.
   d. Mexichem Fluor Inc.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS FOR REFRIGERANT

A. Suction Lines for Conventional Air-Conditioning Applications: Copper, Type CR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed joints.

B. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines, and Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed joints.

3.2 VALVE AND SPECIALTY APPLICATIONS:

C. Install diaphragm packless valves in suction and discharge lines of compressor.

D. Install service valves for gage taps at inlet and outlet of hot-gas bypass valves and strainers if they are not an integral part of valves and strainers.

E. Install a check valve at the compressor discharge and a liquid accumulator at the compressor suction connection.

F. Except as otherwise indicated, install diaphragm packless valves on inlet and outlet side of filter dryers.

G. Install a full-size, three-valve bypass around filter dryers.

H. Install solenoid valves upstream from each expansion valve and hot-gas bypass valve. Install solenoid valves in horizontal lines with coil at top.

I. Install thermostatic expansion valves as close as possible to distributors on evaporators.

1. Install valve so diaphragm case is warmer than bulb.
2. Secure bulb to clean, straight, horizontal section of suction line using two bulb straps. Do not mount bulb in a trap or at bottom of the line.
3. If external equalizer lines are required, make connection where it will reflect suction-line pressure at bulb location.

J. Install safety relief valves where required by 2010 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Pipe safety-relief-valve discharge line to outside according to ASHRAE 15.

K. Install moisture/liquid indicators in liquid line at the inlet of the thermostatic expansion valve or at the inlet of the evaporator coil capillary tube.

L. Install strainers upstream from and adjacent to the following unless they are furnished as an integral assembly for the device being protected:

1. Solenoid valves.
2. Thermostatic expansion valves.
3. Hot-gas bypass valves.
4. Compressor.

M. Install filter dryers in liquid line between compressor and thermostatic expansion valve.

N. Install receivers sized to accommodate pump-down charge.

O. Install flexible connectors at compressors.

3.3 PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems; indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings.

B. Install refrigerant piping according to ASHRAE 15.

C. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.

D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.

E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.

F. Install piping adjacent to machines to allow service and maintenance.

G. Install piping free of sags and bends.

H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

I. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.

J. Install piping as short and direct as possible, with a minimum number of joints, elbows, and fittings.

K. Arrange piping to allow inspection and service of refrigeration equipment. Install valves and specialties in accessible locations to allow for service and inspection. Install access doors or panels if valves or equipment requiring maintenance is concealed behind finished surfaces.

L. Install refrigerant piping in protective conduit where installed belowground.

M. Install refrigerant piping in rigid or flexible conduit in locations where exposed to mechanical injury.

N. Slope refrigerant piping as follows:

1. Install horizontal hot-gas discharge piping with a uniform slope downward away from compressor.
2. Install horizontal suction lines with a uniform slope downward to compressor.
3. Install traps and double risers to entrain oil in vertical runs.
4. Liquid lines may be installed level.

O. When brazing or soldering, remove solenoid-valve coils and sight glasses; also remove valve stems, seats, and packing, and accessible internal parts of refrigerant specialties. Do not apply heat near expansion-valve bulb.

P. Before installation of steel refrigerant piping, clean pipe and fittings using the following procedures:

1. Shot blast the interior of piping.
2. Remove coarse particles of dirt and dust by drawing a clean, lintless cloth through tubing by means of a wire or electrician's tape.
3. Draw a clean, lintless cloth saturated with trichloroethylene through the tube or pipe. Continue this procedure until cloth is not discolored by dirt.
4. Draw a clean, lintless cloth, saturated with compressor oil, squeezed dry, through the tube or pipe to remove remaining lint. Inspect tube or pipe visually for remaining dirt and lint.
5. Finally, draw a clean, dry, lintless cloth through the tube or pipe.
6. Safety-relief-valve discharge piping is not required to be cleaned but is required to be open to allow unrestricted flow.

Q. Install piping with adequate clearance between pipe and adjacent walls and hangers or between pipes for insulation installation.

R. Identify refrigerant piping and valves according to Section 230553 – IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT.

3.4 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.

B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.

C. Fill pipe and fittings with an inert gas (nitrogen or carbon dioxide), during brazing or welding, to prevent scale formation.

D. Soldered Joints: Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."

E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," Chapter "Pipe and Tube."

1. Use Type BCuP (copper-phosphorus) alloy for joining copper socket fittings with copper pipe.
2. Use Type BAg (cadmium-free silver) alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.

F. Threaded Joints: Thread steel pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and to restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:

1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry-seal threading is specified.
2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.

G. Steel pipe can be threaded, but threaded joints must be seal brazed or seal welded.

H. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12M/D10.12.

I. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.

3.5 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Comply with requirements for pipe hangers and supports specified in Section 230529 – HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT.

B. Install the following pipe attachments:

1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal runs less than 20 feet long.
2. Roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal runs 20 feet or longer.
3. Pipe Roller: MSS SP-58, Type 44 for multiple horizontal piping 20 feet or longer, supported on a trapeze.
4. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
5. Copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.

C. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod diameters:

1. NPS 1/2: Maximum span, 60 inches; minimum rod, ¼-inch.
2. NPS 5/8: Maximum span, 60 inches; minimum rod, ¼-inch.
3. NPS 1: Maximum span, 72 inches; minimum rod, ¼- inch.
4. NPS 1-1/4: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod, 3/8-inch.
5. NPS 1-1/2: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod, 3/8-inch.
6. NPS 2: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod, 3/8-inch.
7. NPS 2-1/2: Maximum span, 108 inches; minimum rod, 3/8-inch.
8. NPS 3: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod, 3/8-inch.
9. NPS 4: Maximum span, 12 feet; minimum rod, ½- inch.

D. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:

1. NPS 2: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod, 3/8-inch.
2. NPS 2-1/2: Maximum span, 11 feet; minimum rod, 3/8-inch.
3. NPS 3: Maximum span, 12 feet; minimum rod, 3/8-inch.
4. NPS 4: Maximum span, 14 feet; minimum rod, ½- inch.

E. Support multifloor vertical runs at least at each floor.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Comply with ASME B31.5, Chapter VI.
2. Test refrigerant piping, specialties, and receivers. Isolate compressor, condenser, evaporator, and safety devices from test pressure if they are not rated above the test pressure.
3. Test high- and low-pressure side piping of each system separately at not less than the pressures indicated in "Performance Requirements" Article.
    a. Fill system with nitrogen to the required test pressure.
    b. System shall maintain test pressure at the manifold gage throughout duration of test.
    c. Test joints and fittings with electronic leak detector or by brushing a small amount of soap and glycerin solution over joints.
    d. Remake leaking joints using new materials, and retest until satisfactory results are achieved.

B. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.7 SYSTEM CHARGING

A. Charge system using the following procedures:

1. Install core in filter dryers after leak test but before evacuation.
2. Evacuate entire refrigerant system with a vacuum pump to 500 micrometers. If vacuum holds for 12 hours, system is ready for charging.
3. Break vacuum with refrigerant gas, allowing pressure to build up to 2 psig.
4. Charge system with a new filter-dryer core in charging line.

3.8 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust thermostatic expansion valve to obtain proper evaporator superheat.

B. Adjust high- and low-pressure switch settings to avoid short cycling in response to fluctuating suction pressure.

C. Adjust set-point temperature of air-conditioning or chilled-water controllers to the system design temperature.

D. Perform the following adjustments before operating the refrigeration system, according to manufacturer's written instructions:

1. Open shutoff valves in condenser water circuit.
2. Verify that compressor oil level is correct.
3. Open compressor suction and discharge valves.
4. Open refrigerant valves except bypass valves that are used for other purposes.
5. Check open compressor-motor alignment and verify lubrication for motors and bearings.

E. Replace core of replaceable filter dryer after system has been adjusted and after design flow rates and pressures are established.

******END OF SECTION******

SECTION 233110
DUCTWORK AND ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Sheet metal ducts:
   a. Single-wall rectangular ducts and fittings.
   b. Single-wall round ducts and fittings.
   c. Sheet metal materials.
   d. Sheet metal duct liner.
   e. Sheet metal sealants and gaskets.
   f. Sheet metal hangers and supports.
2. Flexible ducts:
   a. Insulated flexible ducts.
3. Air Duct Accessories:
   a. Manual volume dampers.
   b. Flange connectors.
   c. Turning vanes.
   d. Remote damper operators.
   e. Duct-mounted access doors.
   f. Flexible connectors.
   g. Duct accessory hardware.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 23 05 48 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC" for vibration-isolated and restrained ductwork hangers and supports.
2. Section 23 05 93 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing requirements for metal ducts.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of the following products:
1. Liners and adhesives.
2. Sealants and gaskets.
3. Flexible ducts.

B. Shop Drawings: For ductwork and accessories. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Fabrication, assembly, and installation, including plans, elevations, sections, components, and attachments to other work.
2. Factory- and shop-fabricated ducts and fittings.
3. Duct layout indicating sizes, configuration, liner material, and static-pressure classes.
4. Elevation of top and bottom of ducts.
5. Dimensions of main duct runs from building grid lines.
6. Fittings.
7. Reinforcement and spacing.
8. Seam and joint construction.
9. Penetrations through fire-rated, smoke-rated, and other partitions.
10. Equipment installation based on equipment being used on Project.
11. Locations for duct accessories, including dampers, turning vanes, and access doors and panels.
12. Include plans showing locations and mounting and attachment details.
13. Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment and vibration isolation.
14. Detail duct accessories fabrication and installation in ducts and other construction. Include dimensions, weights, loads, and required clearances; and method of field assembly into duct systems and other construction. Include the following:
    a. Special fittings.
    b. Manual volume damper installations.
    c. Control-damper installations.
    d. Fire-damper, smoke-damper, combination fire- and smoke-damper, ceiling, and corridor damper installations, including sleeves; and duct-mounted access doors and remote damper operators.
    e. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal:

1. Duct material and thicknesses.
2. Joint and seam construction and sealing.
3. Reinforcement details and spacing.
4. Materials, fabrication, assembly, and spacing of hangers and supports.
5. Design Calculations: Calculations, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation for selecting hangers and supports.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: A single set of plans or BIM model, drawn to scale, showing the items described in this Section, and coordinated with all building trades.

B. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air duct accessories to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-up."

B. ASHRAE/IES Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6.4.4 - "HVAC System Construction and Insulation."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SHEET METAL DUCTS

A. PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

1. Delegated Duct Design: Duct construction, including sheet metal thicknesses, seam and joint construction, reinforcements, and hangers and supports, shall comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" and with performance requirements and design criteria indicated in "Duct Schedule" Article.
2. Structural Performance: Duct hangers and supports and seismic restraints shall withstand the effects of gravity and seismic loads and stresses within limits and under conditions described in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" and. SMACNA's "Seismic Restraint Manual: Guidelines for Mechanical Systems."
3. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
4. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment," and Section 7 - "Construction and System Startup."

5. ASHRAE/IES Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6.4.4 - "HVAC System Construction and Insulation."
6. Duct Dimensions: Unless otherwise indicated, all duct dimensions indicated on Drawings are inside clear dimensions and do not include insulation or duct wall thickness.

B. SINGLE-WALL RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

1. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
2. Transverse Joints: Fabricate joints in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-1, "Rectangular Duct/Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
   a. For ducts with longest side less than 36 inches, select joint types in accordance with Figure 2-1.
   b. For ducts with longest side 36 inches or greater, use flange joint connector Type T-22, T-24, T-24A, T-25a, or T-25b. Factory-fabricated flanged duct connection system may be used if submitted and approved by engineer of record.
   c. Where specified for specific applications, all joints shall be welded.
3. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Duct/Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
4. Elbows, Transitions, Offsets, Branch Connections, and Other Duct Construction: Select types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Ch. 4, "Fittings and Other Construction," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

C. SINGLE-WALL ROUND DUCTS AND FITTINGS

1. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Ch. 3,

"Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.

2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    a. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
    b. Elgen Manufacturing.
    c. Linx Industries (formerly Lindab).
    d. McGill AirFlow LLC.
    e. MKT Metal Manufacturing.
    f. Nordfab Ducting.
    g. SEMCO LLC.
    h. Set Duct Manufacturing.
    i. Sheet Metal Connectors, Inc.
    j. Spiral Manufacturing Co., Inc.
    k. Stamped Fittings Inc.
3. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Round Duct Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
    a. Transverse Joints in Ducts Larger Than 60 Inches in Diameter: Flanged.
4. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Round Duct Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
    a. Fabricate round ducts larger than 90 inches in diameter with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
    b. Fabricate flat-oval ducts larger than 72 inches in width (major dimension) with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
5. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

D. SHEET METAL MATERIALS

1. General Material Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.
2. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A653/A653M.
    a. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90.
    b. Finishes for Surfaces Exposed to View: Mill phosphatized.
3. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: ASTM A36/A36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
    a. Where black- and galvanized-steel shapes and plates are used to reinforce aluminum ducts, isolate the different metals with butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM gasket materials.
4. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch-minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch-minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

E. SHEET METAL DUCT LINER

1. Fiberglass-Free Duct Liner: Made from partially recycled cotton or polyester products and containing no fiberglass. Airstream surface overlaid with fire-resistant facing to prevent surface erosion by airstream, complying with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B. Treat natural-fiber products with antimicrobial coating.
    a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
        1) Acoustical Surfaces, Inc.
        2) Bonded Logic, Inc.
        3) Ductmate Industries, Inc.
    b. Maximum Thermal Conductivity: 0.24 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature when tested in accordance with ASTM C518.
    c. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84; certified by an NRTL.
    d. Liner Adhesive: As recommended by insulation manufacturer and complying with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
        1) Adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less.

2) Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

2. Insulation Pins and Washers:
   a. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.
   b. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick galvanized steel; with beveled edge sized as equired to hold insulation securely in place, but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
3. Shop Application of Duct Liner: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 7-11, "Flexible Duct Liner Installation."
   a. Adhere a single layer of indicated thickness of duct liner with at least 90 percent adhesive coverage at liner contact surface area. Attaining indicated thickness with multiple layers of duct liner is prohibited.
   b. Apply adhesive to transverse edges of liner facing upstream that do not receive metal nosing.
   c. Butt transverse joints without gaps, and coat joint with adhesive.
   d. Fold and compress liner in corners of rectangular ducts or cut and fit to ensure butted-edge overlapping.
   e. Do not apply liner in rectangular ducts with longitudinal joints, except at corners of ducts, unless duct size and dimensions of standard liner make longitudinal joints necessary.
   f. Apply adhesive coating on longitudinal seams in ducts with air velocity of 2500 fpmor greater.
   g. Secure liner with mechanical fasteners 4 inches from corners and at intervals not exceeding 12 inches transversely; at 3 inches from transverse joints and at intervals not exceeding 18 inches longitudinally.
   h. Secure transversely oriented liner edges facing the airstream with metal nosings that have either channel or "Z" profiles or are integrally formed from duct wall. Fabricate edge facings at the following locations:
      1) Fan discharges.
      2) Intervals of lined duct preceding unlined duct.

3) Upstream edges of transverse joints in ducts where air velocities are higher than 2500 fpm or where indicated.

i. Secure insulation between perforated sheet metal inner duct of same thickness as specified for outer shell. Use mechanical fasteners that maintain inner duct at uniform distance from outer shell without compressing insulation.
   1) Sheet Metal Inner Duct Perforations: 3/32-inch diameter, with an overall open area of 23 percent.

j. Terminate inner ducts with buildouts attached to fire-damper sleeves, dampers, turning vane assemblies, or other devices. Fabricated buildouts (metal hat sections) or other buildout means are optional; when used, secure buildouts to duct walls with bolts, screws, rivets, or welds.

F. SHEET METAL SEALANT AND GASKETS

1. General Sealant and Gasket Requirements: Surface-burning characteristics for sealants and gaskets shall be a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
2. Two-Part Tape Sealing System:
   a. Tape: Woven cotton fiber impregnated with mineral gypsum and modified acrylic/silicone activator to react exothermically with tape to form hard, durable, airtight seal.
   b. Tape Width: 4 inches.
   c. Sealant: Modified styrene acrylic.
   d. Water resistant.
   e. Mold and mildew resistant.
   f. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10 inch wg, positive and negative.
   g. Service: Indoor and outdoor.
   h. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
   i. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum.
   j. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less.
   k. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
3. Water-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:
   a. Application Method: Brush on.
   b. Solids Content: Minimum 65 percent.
   c. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 20.

d. Water resistant.
e. Mold and mildew resistant.
f. VOC: Maximum 75 g/L (less water).
g. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10 inch wg, positive and negative.
h. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
i. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.

4. Flanged Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C920.
   a. General: Single-component, acid-curing, silicone, elastomeric.
   b. Type: S.
   c. Grade: NS.
   d. Class: 25.
   e. Use: O.
   f. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less.
   g. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
5. Flange Gaskets: Butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM polymer with polyisobutylene plasticizer.
6. Round Duct Joint O-Ring Seals:
   a. Seal shall provide maximum leakage class of 3 cfm/100 sq. ft. at 1-inch wg and shall be rated for10-inch wg static-pressure class, positive or negative.
   b. EPDM O-ring to seal in concave bead in coupling or fitting spigot.
   c. Double-lipped, EPDM O-ring seal, mechanically fastened to factory-fabricated couplings and fitting spigots.

G. SHEET METAL HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

1. Hanger Rods for Noncorrosive Environments: Galvanized-steel rods and nuts.
2. Strap and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct."
3. Steel Cables for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel complying with ASTM A603.
4. Steel Cable End Connections: Galvanized-steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for duct hanger service; with an automatic-locking and clamping device.

5. Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.
6. Trapeze and Riser Supports:
   a. Supports for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized-steel shapes and plates.

2.2 FLEXIBLE DUCTS

A. INSULATED FLEXIBLE DUCTS

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
   b. JP Lamborn Co.
   c. McGill AirFlow LLC.
   d. Thermaflex; a Flex-Tek Group company.
   e. Ward Industries; a brand of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
2. Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, two-ply vinyl film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; polyethylene vapor-barrier film.
   a. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg positive and 1.0-inch wg negative.
   b. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm.
   c. Temperature Range: Minus 10 to plus 160 deg F.
   d. Insulation R-Value: R6.

B. FLEXIBLE DUCT CONNECTORS

1. Clamps: Stainless-steel band with cadmium-plated hex screw to tighten band with a worm-gear action in sizes 3 through 18 inches, to suit duct size.

2.3 AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES

A. ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION

1. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and with NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."
2. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

B. MATERIALS

1. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A653/A653M.
   a. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90.
   b. Exposed-Surface Finish: Mill phosphatized.
2. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: Galvanized-steel reinforcement where installed on galvanized sheet metal ducts; compatible materials for aluminum and stainless-steel ducts.
3. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

C. MANUAL VOLUME DAMPERS

1. Standard, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers:
   a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      1) Aire Technologies.
      2) American Warming and Ventilating; a Mestek Architectural Group company.
      3) Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
      4) Flex-Tek Group.
      5) McGill AirFlow LLC.
      6) Nailor Industries Inc.
      7) Pottorff.
      8) Ruskin Company.
      9) Safe Air - Dowco Products.
      10) Trox USA Inc.
      11) United Enertech.
      12) Vent Products Co., Inc.
   b. Standard leakage rating.
   c. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
   d. Frames:
      1) Frame: Hat-shaped, 0.094-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel.
      2) Mitered and welded corners.
      3) Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
   e. Blades:
      1) Multiple or single blade.
      2) Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
      3) Stiffen damper blades for stability.
      4) Galvanized-steel, 0.064 inch thick.
   f. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.
   g. Bearings:
      1) Molded synthetic.

2) Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.

h. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.

2. Jackshaft:
   a. Size: 1-inch diameter.
   b. Material: Galvanized-steel pipe rotating within pipe-bearing assembly mounted on supports at each mullion and at each end of multiple-damper assemblies.
   c. Length and Number of Mountings: As required to connect linkage of each damper in multiple-damper assembly.
3. Damper Hardware:
   a. Zinc-plated, die-cast core with dial and handle made of 3/32-inch-thick zinc-plated steel, and a 3/4-inch hexagon locking nut.
   b. Include center hole to suit damper operating-rod size.
   c. Include elevated platform for insulated duct mounting.

D. FLANGE CONNECTORS

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. CL WARD & Family Inc.
   b. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
   c. Elgen Manufacturing.
   d. Hardcast, Inc.
   e. Nexus PDQ.
   f. Ward Industries; a brand of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
2. Description: Roll-formed, factory-fabricated, slide-on transverse flange connectors, gaskets, and components.
3. Material: Galvanized steel.
4. Gage and Shape: Match connecting ductwork.

E. TURNING VANES

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Aero-Dyne Sound Control Co.
   b. CL WARD & Family Inc.
   c. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
   d. Duro Dyne Inc.
   e. Elgen Manufacturing.
   f. Hardcast, Inc.
   g. METALAIRE, Inc.
   h. SEMCO LLC.
   i. Ward Industries; a brand of Hart & Cooley, Inc.

2. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Metal Ducts: Curved blades of galvanized sheet steel; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.
    a. Acoustic Turning Vanes: Fabricate airfoil-shaped aluminum extrusions with perforated faces and fibrous-glass fill.
3. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Nonmetal Ducts: Fabricate curved blades of resin-bonded fiberglass with acrylic polymer coating; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.
4. General Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
5. Vane Construction: Double wall.
6. Vane Construction: Single wall for ducts up to 48 inches wide and double wall for larger dimensions.

F. REMOTE DAMPER OPERATORS

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    a. Pottorff.
    b. Ventfabrics, Inc.
    c. Young Regulator Company.
2. Description: Cable system designed for remote manual damper adjustment.
3. Tubing: Brass.
4. Cable: Stainless steel.
5. Wall-Box Mounting: Recessed or Surface.
6. Wall-Box Cover-Plate Material: Steel.

G. DUCT-MOUNTED ACCESS DOORS

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    a. Aire Technologies.
    b. American Warming and Ventilating; a Mestek Architectural Group company.
    c. Cesco Products; a division of MESTEK, Inc.
    d. CL WARD & Family Inc.
    e. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
    f. Elgen Manufacturing.
    g. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
    h. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
    i. McGill AirFlow LLC.
    j. Nailor Industries Inc.

k. Pottorff.
l. United Enertech.
m. Ventfabrics, Inc.
n. Ward Industries; a brand of Hart & Cooley, Inc.

2. Duct-Mounted Access Doors: Fabricate access panels according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 7-2, "Duct Access Doors and Panels," and 7-3, "Access Doors - Round Duct."
   a. Door:
      1) Double wall, rectangular.
      2) Galvanized sheet metal with insulation fill and thickness as indicated for duct pressure class.
      3) Vision panel.
      4) Hinges and Latches: 1-by-1-inchbutt or piano hinge and cam latches.
      5) Fabricate doors airtight and suitable for duct pressure class.
   b. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel, with bend-over tabs and foam gaskets.
   c. Number of Hinges and Locks:
      1) Access Doors Less Than 12 Inches Square: No hinges and two sash locks.
      2) Access Doors up to 18 Inches Square: Two hinges and two sash locks.
      3) Access Doors up to 24 by 48 Inches: Three hinges and two compression latches with outside and inside handles.
      4) Access Doors Larger Than 24 by 48 Inches: Four hinges and two compression latches with outside and inside handles.

3. Pressure Relief Access Door:
   a. Door and Frame Material: Galvanized sheet steel.
   b. Door: Double wall with insulation fill with metal thickness applicable for duct pressure class.
   c. Operation: Open outward for positive-pressure ducts and inward for negative-pressure ducts.
   d. Factory set at 10-inch wg.
   e. Doors close when pressures are within set-point range.
   f. Hinge: Continuous piano.
   g. Latches: Cam.
   h. Seal: Neoprene or foam rubber.
   i. Insulation Fill: 1-inch-thick, fibrous-glass or polystyrene-foam board.

H. DUCT ACCESS PANEL ASSEMBLIES

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. 3M.
   b. CL WARD & Family Inc.
   c. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
   d. Flame Gard, Inc.
2. Labeled according to UL 1978 by an NRTL.
3. Panel and Frame: Minimum thickness 0.0528-inch carbon steel.
4. Fasteners: Carbon steel. Panel fasteners shall not penetrate duct wall.
5. Gasket: Comply with NFPA 96; grease-tight, high-temperature ceramic fiber, rated for minimum 2000 deg F.
6. Minimum Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg, positive or negative.

I. FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. CL WARD & Family Inc.
   b. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
   c. Duro Dyne Inc.
   d. Elgen Manufacturing.
   e. Hardcast, Inc.
   f. JP Lamborn Co.
   g. Ventfabrics, Inc.
   h. Ward Industries; a brand of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
2. Materials: Flame-retardant or noncombustible fabrics.
3. Coatings and Adhesives: Comply with UL 181, Class 1.
4. Metal-Edged Connectors: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip 3-1/2 inches wide attached to two strips of 2-3/4-inch-wide, 0.028-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel or 0.032-inch-thick aluminum sheets. Provide metal compatible with connected ducts.
5. Indoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with neoprene.
   a. Minimum Weight: 26 oz./sq. yd..
   b. Tensile Strength: 480 lbf/inch in the warp and 360 lbf/inch in the filling.
   c. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
6. Thrust Limits: Combination coil spring and elastomeric insert with spring and insert in compression, and with a load stop. Include rod and angle-iron brackets for attaching to fan discharge and duct.
   a. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular rod

misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.

b. Outdoor Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
c. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
d. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
e. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
f. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene.
g. Coil Spring: Factory set and field adjustable for a maximum of 1/4-inch movement at start and stop.

J. DUCT ACCESSORY HARDWARE

1. Instrument Test Holes: Cast iron or cast aluminum to suit duct material, including screw cap and gasket. Size to allow insertion of pitot tube and other testing instruments and of length to suit duct-insulation thickness.
2. Adhesives: High strength, quick setting, neoprene based, waterproof, and resistant to gasoline and grease.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SHEET METAL DUCTS

A. DUCT INSTALLATION

1. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of duct system. Indicated duct locations, configurations, and arrangements were used to size ducts and calculate friction loss for air-handling equipment sizing and for other design considerations. Install duct systems as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings and coordination drawings.
2. Install ducts in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" unless otherwise indicated.
3. Install ducts in maximum practical lengths with fewest possible joints.
4. Install factory- or shop-fabricated fittings for changes in direction, size, and shape and for branch connections.
5. Unless otherwise indicated, install ducts vertically and horizontally, and parallel and perpendicular to building lines.

6. Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.
7. Install ducts with a clearance of 1 inch, plus allowance for insulation thickness.
8. Route ducts to avoid passing through transformer vaults and electrical equipment rooms and enclosures.
9. Where ducts pass through non-fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls and are exposed to view, cover the opening between the partition and duct or duct insulation with sheet metal flanges of same metal thickness as the duct. Overlap openings on four sides by at least 1-1/2 inches.
10. Install fire, combination fire/smoke, and smoke dampers where indicated on Drawings and as required by code, and by local authorities having jurisdiction. Comply with requirements for fire and smoke dampers and specific installation requirements of the damper UL listing.
11. Install heating coils, cooling coils, air filters, dampers, and all other duct-mounted accessories in air ducts where indicated on Drawings.
12. Protect duct interiors from moisture, construction debris and dust, and other foreign materials both before and after installation. Comply with SMACNA's "IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction," Appendix G, "Duct Cleanliness for New Construction Guidelines."
13. Elbows: Use long-radius elbows wherever they fit.
    a. Fabricate 90-degree rectangular mitered elbows to include turning vanes.
    b. Fabricate 90-degree round elbows with a minimum of three segments for 12 inches and smaller and a minimum of five segments for 14 inches and larger.
14. Branch Connections: Use lateral or conical branch connections.

B. INSTALLATION OF EXPOSED DUCTWORK

1. Protect ducts exposed in finished spaces from being dented, scratched, or damaged.
2. Trim duct sealants flush with metal. Create a smooth and uniform exposed bead. Do not use two-part tape sealing system.
3. Grind welds to provide smooth surface free of burrs, sharp edges, and weld splatter. When welding stainless steel with a No. 3 or 4 finish, grind the welds flush, polish the exposed welds, and treat the welds to remove discoloration caused by welding.
4. Maintain consistency, symmetry, and uniformity in arrangement and fabrication of fittings, hangers and supports, duct accessories, and air outlets.

5. Repair or replace damaged sections and finished work that does not comply with these requirements.

C. DUCT SEALING

1. Seal ducts for duct static-pressure, seal classes, and leakage classes specified in "Duct Schedule" Article in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

D. HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 5, "Hangers and Supports."
2. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.
    a. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
    b. Install powder-actuated concrete fasteners after concrete is placed and completely cured.
    c. Use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for standard-weight aggregate concretes or for slabs more than 4 inches thick.
    d. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes or for slabs less than 4 inches thick.
    e. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for seismic restraints.
3. Hanger Spacing: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct," for maximum hanger spacing; install hangers and supports within 24 inches of each elbow and within 48 inches of each branch intersection.
4. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.
5. Support vertical ducts with steel angles or channel secured to the sides of the duct with welds, bolts, sheet metal screws, or blind rivets; support at each floor and at a maximum intervals of 16 feet.
6. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

E. CONNECTIONS

1. Make connections to equipment with flexible connectors complying with the “Air Duct Accessories" section of this specification.
2. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for branch, outlet and inlet, and terminal unit connections.

F. FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

1. Perform tests and inspections.
2. Duct System Cleanliness Tests:
   a. Visually inspect duct system to ensure that no visible contaminants are present.
   b. Test sections of metal duct system, chosen randomly by Owner, for cleanliness in accordance with "Description of Method 3 - NADCA Vacuum Test" in NADCA ACR, "Assessment, Cleaning and Restoration of HVAC Systems."
      1) Acceptable Cleanliness Level: Net weight of debris collected on the filter media shall not exceed 0.75 mg/100 sq. cm.
3. Duct system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
4. Prepare test and inspection reports.

G. STARTUP

1. Air Balance: Comply with requirements in Section 23 05 93 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

H. DUCT SCHEDULE

1. Fabricate ducts as indicated in the following schedules and notes.
   a. Fabricate all ducts to achieve SMACNA pressure class, seal class, and leakage class as indicated below.
2. Supply Ducts:

System/ Equipment	**Duct Material**	**Pressure Class (inch wg)**	**Minimum SMACNA Seal Class**	**SMACNA Leakage Class**		**Notes**
				Rectangular	**Round/Flat Oval**	
Low Pressure: - Air-	G-90 Galvaniz	(+) ≤ 2	B	6	3	1

Handling Units - Fan Coil Units - Furnaces - Heat Pumps - Terminal Units	ed Sheet Steel					

Legend:
(+) – Positive Pressure
(-) – Negative Pressure
(+/-) – Positive or Negative Pressure

Notes:
1. Unless noted otherwise, ductwork installed in exposed locations shall be provided with a mill finish and without shop stickers.

3. Return and Outdoor Ducts:

System/ Equipment	**Duct Material**	**Pressure Class (inch wg)**	**Minimum SMACNA Seal Class**	**SMACNA Leakage Class**		**Notes**
				Rectangular	**Round/Flat Oval**	
Low Pressure: - Air-Handling Units - Fan Coil Units - Furnaces - Heat Pumps - Terminal Units	G-90 Galvanized Sheet Steel	(+/-) ≤ 2	B	12	12	1

Legend:
(+) – Positive Pressure
(-) – Negative Pressure
(+/-) – Positive or Negative Pressure

Notes:
1. Unless noted otherwise, ductwork installed in exposed locations shall be provided with a mill finish and without shop stickers.

4. Exhaust Ducts:

System/ Equipment	Duct Material	Pressure Class (inch wg)	Minimum SMACNA Seal Class	SMACNA Leakage Class		Notes
				Rectangular	Round/Flat Oval	
Low Pressure: - Class 1 and 2 Air (ASHRAE 62.1)	G-90 Galvanized Sheet Steel	(+/-) ≤ 2	(-): B (+): A	12	6	1
Low Pressure: - Air-Handling Units	G-90 Galvanized Sheet Steel	(+/-) ≤ 2	(-): B (+): A	24	12	1

Legend:
(+) – Positive Pressure
(-) – Negative Pressure
(+/-) – Positive or Negative Pressure

Notes:
1. Unless otherwise noted, ductwork installed in exposed locations shall be provided with a mill finish and without shop stickers.

5. Intermediate Reinforcement:
   a. Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel.
6. Liner:
   a. Return-Air Ducts: Natural fiber, 1 inch(es thick.
7. Elbow Configuration:
   a. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
      1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
      2) Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
      3) Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."

b. Round Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "Round Duct Elbows."
   1) Minimum Radius-to-Diameter Ratio and Elbow Segments: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 3-1, "Mitered Elbows." Elbows with less than 90-degree change of direction have proportionately fewer segments.
   a) Radius-to Diameter Ratio: 1.5.

8. Branch Configuration:
   a. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-6, "Branch Connection."
      1) Rectangular Main to Rectangular Branch: 45-degree entry.
      2) Rectangular Main to Round Branch: Conical spin in.
   b. Round and Flat Oval: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees." Saddle taps are permitted in existing duct.
      1) Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower: 90-degree tap.
      2) Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm: Conical tap.
      3) Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher: 45-degree lateral.

3.2 FLEXIBLE DUCTS

A. INSTALLATION

1. Install flexible ducts according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116, "Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards," for fibrous-glass ducts.
2. Install in indoor applications only. Flexible ductwork should not be exposed to UV lighting.
3. Connect diffusers or light troffer boots to ducts with maximum 60-inch lengths of flexible duct clamped or strapped in place.
4. Connect flexible ducts to metal ducts with draw bands.
5. Install duct test holes where required for testing and balancing purposes.
6. Installation:
   a. Install ducts fully extended.
   b. Do not bend ducts across sharp corners.
   c. Bends of flexible ducting shall not exceed a minimum of one duct diameter.

d. Avoid contact with metal fixtures, water lines, pipes, or conduits.
e. Install flexible ducts in a direct line, without sags, twists, or turns.

7. Supporting Flexible Ducts:
   a. Suspend flexible ducts with bands 1-1/2 inches wide or wider and spaced a maximum of 48 inches apart. Maximum centerline sag between supports shall not exceed 1/2 inch per 12 inches.
   b. Install extra supports at bends placed approximately one duct diameter from center line of the bend.
   c. Ducts may rest on ceiling joists or truss supports. Spacing between supports shall not exceed the maximum spacing per manufacturer's written installation instructions.
   d. Vertically installed ducts shall be stabilized by support straps at a maximum of 72 inches o.c.

3.3 AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES

A. INSTALLATION

1. Install duct accessories according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116, "Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards," for fibrous-glass ducts.
2. Install duct accessories of materials suited to duct materials; use galvanized-steel accessories in galvanized-steel and fibrous-glass ducts, stainless-steel accessories in stainless-steel ducts, and aluminum accessories in aluminum ducts.
3. Install volume dampers at points on supply, return, and exhaust systems where branches extend from larger ducts. Where dampers are installed in ducts having duct liner, install dampers with hat channels of same depth as liner, and terminate liner with nosing at hat channel.
   a. Install steel volume dampers in steel ducts.
4. Set dampers to fully open position before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
5. Install test holes at fan inlets and outlets and elsewhere as indicated.
6. Install duct access doors on sides of ducts to allow for inspecting, adjusting, and maintaining accessories and equipment at the following locations:
   a. On both sides of duct coils.
   b. Upstream from duct filters.
   c. At outdoor-air intakes and mixed-air plenums.
   d. At drain pans and seals.

e. Downstream from manual volume dampers, control dampers, backdraft dampers, and equipment.
f. Adjacent to and close enough to fire or smoke dampers, to reset or reinstall fusible links. Access doors for access to fire or smoke dampers having fusible links shall be pressure relief access doors and shall be outward operation for access doors installed upstream from dampers and inward operation for access doors installed downstream from dampers.
g. At each change in direction and at maximum 50-foot spacing.
h. Upstream from turning vanes.
i. Upstream or downstream from duct silencers.
j. Control devices requiring inspection.
k. Elsewhere as indicated.

7. Install access doors with swing against duct static pressure.
8. Access Door Sizes:
   a. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 8 by 5 inches.
   b. Two-Hand Access: 12 by 6 inches.
   c. Head and Hand Access: 18 by 10 inches.
   d. Head and Shoulders Access: 21 by 14 inches.
   e. Body Access: 25 by 14 inches.
   f. Body plus Ladder Access: 25 by 17 inches.
9. Label access doors according to Section 23 05 53 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" to indicate the purpose of access door.
10. Install flexible connectors to connect ducts to equipment.
11. Install thrust limits at centerline of thrust, symmetrical on both sides of equipment. Attach thrust limits at centerline of thrust and adjust to a maximum of 1/4-inch movement during start and stop of fans.

B. FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

1. Tests and Inspections:
   a. Operate dampers to verify full range of movement.
   b. Inspect locations of access doors and verify that purpose of access door can be performed.
   c. Operate fire, smoke, and combination fire and smoke dampers to verify full range of movement and verify that proper heat-response device is installed.
   d. Inspect turning vanes for proper and secure installation.
   e. Operate remote damper operators to verify full range of movement of operator and damper.

******END OF SECTION******

SECTION 233713
AIR DIFFUSERS, REGISTERS AND GRILLS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Rectangular and square ceiling diffusers.
2. Fixed face registers and grilles.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Data Sheet: Indicate materials of construction, finish, and mounting details; and performance data including throw and drop, static-pressure drop, and noise ratings.
2. Diffuser, register and grille Schedule: Indicate drawing designation, room location, quantity, model number, size, and accessories furnished.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Ceiling suspension assembly members.
2. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
3. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
4. Ceiling-mounted items including lighting fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings.
5. Duct access panels.

B. Source quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 RECTANGULAR AND SQUARE CEILING DIFFUSERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Krueger.
2. METALAIRE, Inc.
3. Nailor Industries Inc.
4. Price Industries.
5. Titus.
6. Tuttle & Bailey.

B. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.

C. Material: c

D. Finish: Baked enamel, white.

E. Face Size: Refer to diffuser, register, and grille schedule on drawings.

F. Face Style: Refer to diffuser, register, and grille schedule on drawings.

G. Mounting: Refer to diffuser, register, and grille schedule on drawings.

H. Pattern: Refer to diffuser, register, and grille schedule on drawings.

I. Dampers: Refer to diffuser, register, and grille schedule on drawings.

J. Accessories: Refer to diffuser, register, and grille schedule on drawings.

2.2 REGISTERS

A. Fixed Face Registers and Grilles:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Krueger.
   b. METALAIRE, Inc.
   c. Nailor Industries Inc.
   d. Price Industries.
   e. Titus.
   f. Tuttle & Bailey.
2. Material: Refer to diffuser, register, and grille schedule on drawings.

3. Finish: Baked enamel, white.
4. Face Blade Arrangement: Refer to diffuser, register, and grille schedule on drawings.
5. Face Arrangement: Perforated core.
6. Core Construction: Integral.
7. Frame: 1-inch wide.
8. Mounting: Countersunk screw.

2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Verification of Performance: Rate diffusers, registers and grilles according to ASHRAE 70, "Method of Testing for Rating the Performance of Air Outlets and Inlets."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas where diffusers, registers and grilles are installed for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of equipment.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install diffusers, registers and grilles level and plumb.

B. Outlets and Inlets: Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and accessories. Air outlet and inlet locations have been indicated to achieve design requirements for air volume, noise criteria, airflow pattern, throw, and pressure drop. Make final locations where indicated, as much as practical. For units installed in lay-in ceiling panels, locate units in the center of panel. Where architectural features or other items conflict with installation, notify Architect for a determination of final location.

C. Install diffusers, registers and grilles with airtight connections to ducts and to allow service and maintenance of dampers, air extractors, and fire dampers.

3.3 ADJUSTING

A. After installation, adjust diffusers, registers and grilles to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before starting air balancing.

******END OF SECTION******

SECTION 237200
AIR-TO-AIR ENERGY RECOVERY EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. Related Sections:
Section 230548 – VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR HVAC
Section 233110 – DUCTWORK AND ACCESSORIES

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Packaged energy recovery units.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design: Design vibration isolation and seismic-restraint details, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings: For air-to-air energy recovery equipment. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Plans, elevations, and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from Installers of the items involved:

1. Suspended ceiling components.
2. Structural members to which equipment or suspension systems will be attached.

B. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, for air-to-air energy recovery equipment, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

C. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS:

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air-to-air energy recovery equipment to include in maintenance manuals.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Filters: Two set(s) of each type of filter specified.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. ARI Compliance:

1. Capacity ratings for air-to-air energy recovery equipment shall comply with ARI 1060, "Performance Rating of Air-to-Air Heat Exchangers for Energy Recovery Ventilation Equipment."
2. Capacity ratings for air coils shall comply with ARI 410, "Forced-Circulation Air- Cooling and Air-Heating Coils."

C. ASHRAE Compliance:

1. Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."
2. Capacity ratings for air-to-air energy recovery equipment shall comply with ASHRAE 84, "Method of Testing Air-to-Air Heat Exchangers."

D. NRCA Compliance: Roof curbs for roof-mounted equipment shall be constructed according to recommendations of NRCA.

E. UL Compliance:

1. Packaged heat recovery ventilators shall comply with requirements in UL 1812, "Ducted Heat Recovery Ventilators"; or UL 1815, "Nonducted Heat Recovery Ventilators."
2. Electric coils shall comply with requirements in UL 1995, "Heating and Cooling Equipment."

1.9 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of air-to-air energy recovery equipment and suspension system with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, fire-suppression system, and partition assemblies.

B. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

C. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations with actual equipment provided.

1.10 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of air-to-air energy recovery equipment that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period for Packaged Energy Recovery Units: Two years.
2. Warranty Period for Fixed-Plate Total Heat Exchangers: 10 years.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PACKAGED ENERGY RECOVERY UNITS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
2. Mitsubishi Electric & Electronics USA, Inc.
3. RenewAire LLC.

B. Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

C. Housing: Manufacturer's standard construction with corrosion-protection coating and exterior finish, gasketed and calked weathertight, hinged access doors with neoprene gaskets for inspection and access to internal parts, minimum 1-inch- thick thermal insulation, knockouts for electrical and piping connections, exterior drain connection, and lifting lugs.

1. Inlet: Duct flange, with damper for exhaust and supply.
   a. Exhaust: Spring-return, two-position, motor-operated damper.
   b. Supply: Spring-return, two-position, motor-operated damper.

D. Heat Recovery Device: Fixed-plate heat exchanger.

E. Supply and Exhaust Fans: Forward-curved, centrifugal fan with neoprene vibration isolation devices.

1. Motor and Drive: Direct driven with variable frequency drive.
2. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 – COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT.
3. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.

F. Disposable Panel Filters:

1. Comply with NFPA 90A.
2. Filter Holding Frames: Arranged for flat or angular orientation, with access doors on both sides of unit. Filters shall be removable from one side or lift out from access plenum.
3. Factory-fabricated, viscous-coated, flat-panel type.
4. Thickness: 2 inches.
5. MERV: 8, according to ASHRAE 52.2.

6. Media: Interlaced glass fibers sprayed with nonflammable adhesive.
7. Frame: Galvanized steel with metal grid on outlet side, steel rod grid on inlet side, hinged, and with pull and retaining handles.

G. Accessories:

1. Low-Leakage, Isolation Dampers: Double-skin, airfoil-blade, extruded-aluminum dampers with compressible jamb seals and extruded-vinyl blade edge seals, in parallel-blade arrangement with cadmium-plated steel operating rods rotating in stainless-steel sleeve bearings mounted in a single extruded-aluminum frame, with operating rods connected with a common linkage, and electric damper operator factory wired. Leakage rate shall not exceed 5 cfm/sq. ft. at 1-inch wg and 9 cfm/sq. ft. at 4-inch wg.
2. Duct flanges.
3. Rubber-in-shear isolators for ceiling-mounted units.
4. Hinged access doors with quarter-turn latches.
5. Onboard variable frequency drives (VFDs) – one for each fan.
6. Shaft grounding ring on motors with VFDs.
7. Fused disconnect.
8. Factory mounted filter alarms – both airstreams.

2.2 CONTROLS

A. Integrated programmable control – enhanced, premium.

B. Digital time clock – wall mount in exterior enclosure.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine casing insulation materials and filter media before air-to-air energy recovery equipment installation. Reject insulation materials and filter media that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.

C. Examine roughing-in for electrical services to verify actual locations of connections before installation.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install fixed-plate heat exchangers so supply and exhaust airstreams flow in opposite directions.

1. Install duct access doors in both supply and exhaust ducts, both upstream and downstream, for access to heat exchanger. Access doors and panels are specified in Section 233110 – DUCTWOR AND ACCESSORIES.

B. Suspended Units: Suspend units from structural-steel support frame using threaded steel rods and spring hangers. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548 – VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR HVAC.

C. Install units with clearances for service and maintenance.

D. Install new filters at completion of equipment installation and before testing, adjusting, and balancing.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Comply with requirements for ductwork specified in Section 233110 – DUCTWORK AND ACCESSORIES.

B. Install electrical devices furnished with units but not factory mounted.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

B. Perform tests and inspections.

1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
2. Adjust seals and purge.
3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

4. Set initial temperature and humidity set points.
5. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.

D. Air-to-air energy recovery equipment will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain air-to-air energy recovery units.

******END OF SECTION******

SECTION 238126
SPLIT-SYSTEM AIR-CONDITIONERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. Related Sections:
Section 230513 – COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT
Section 230548 – VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR HVAC

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes split-system air-conditioning and heat-pump units consisting of separate evaporator-fan and compressor-condenser components.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories. Include performance data in terms of capacities, outlet velocities, static pressures, sound power characteristics, motor requirements, and electrical characteristics.

B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.

2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied color finishes.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

B. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For split-system air-conditioning units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Filters: Two set(s) for each air-handling unit.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. ASHRAE Compliance:

1. Fabricate and label refrigeration system to comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Standard for Refrigeration Systems."

2. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 4 - "Outdoor Air Quality," Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment," Section 6 - " Procedures," and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-up."

C. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.

1.8 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations with actual equipment provided.

1.9 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of split-system air-conditioning units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period:
   a. For Compressor: Five year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.
   b. For Parts: Five year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.
   c. For Labor: Five year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Mitsubishi Electric & Electronics USA, Inc.
2. Samsung HVAC.
3. SANYO North America Corporation.
4. Trane.
5. YORK; a Johnson Controls company.

2.2 INDOOR UNITS

A. Wall-Mounted, Evaporator-Fan Components:

1. Cabinet: Enameled steel with removable panels on front and ends in color selected by Architect, and discharge drain pans with drain connection.
2. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins and thermal-expansion valve. Comply with ARI 206/110.
3. Electric Coil: Helical, nickel-chrome, resistance-wire heating elements; with refractory ceramic support bushings, automatic-reset thermal cutout, built-in magnetic contactors, manual-reset thermal cutout, airflow proving device, and one-time fuses in terminal box for overcurrent protection.
4. Fan: Direct drive, centrifugal.
5. Fan Motors:
   a. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements specified in Section 230513 – COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT.
   b. Multitapped, multispeed with internal thermal protection and permanent lubrication.
   c. Enclosure Type: Totally enclosed, fan cooled.

d. NEMA Premium (TM) efficient motors as defined in NEMA MG 1.

e. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in electrical Sections.

f. Mount unit-mounted disconnect switches on exterior of unit.

6. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

7. Air Filtration Section:

a. General Requirements for Air Filtration Section:

1) Comply with NFPA 90A.

2) Minimum Arrestance: According to ASHRAE 52.1 and MERV according to ASHRAE 52.2.

3) Filter-Holding Frames: Arranged for flat or angular orientation, with access doors on both sides of unit. Filters shall be removable from one side or lifted out from access plenum.

B. Concealed Evaporator-Fan Components:

1. Chassis: Galvanized steel with flanged edges, removable panels for servicing, and insulation on back of panel.

2. Insulation: Faced, glass-fiber duct liner.

3. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins and thermal-expansion valve. Comply with ARI 206/110.

4. Fan: Forward-curved, double-width wheel of galvanized steel; directly connected to motor.

5. Fan Motors:

a. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements specified in Section 230513 – COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT.

b. Multitapped, multispeed with internal thermal protection and permanent lubrication.

c. Wiring Terminations: Connect motor to chassis wiring with plug connection.

6. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

7. Filters: Permanent, cleanable.

2.3 OUTDOOR UNITS

A. Air-Cooled, Compressor-Condenser Components:

1. Casing: Steel, finished with baked enamel in color selected by Architect, with removable panels for access to controls, weep holes for water drainage, and mounting holes in base. Provide brass service valves, fittings, and gage ports on exterior of casing.
2. Compressor: Hermetically sealed with crankcase heater and mounted on vibration isolation device. Compressor motor shall have thermal- and current-sensitive overload devices, start capacitor, relay, and contactor.
    a. Compressor Type: Scroll.
    b. Two-speed compressor motor with manual-reset high-pressure switch and automatic-reset low-pressure switch.
    c. Refrigerant Charge: R-410A.
    d. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins and liquid subcooler. Comply with ARI 206/110.
3. Heat-Pump Components: Reversing valve and low-temperature-air cutoff thermostat.
4. Fan: Aluminum-propeller type, directly connected to motor.
5. Motor: Permanently lubricated, with integral thermal-overload protection.
6. Low Ambient Kit: Permits operation down to 45 deg F.
7. Mounting Base: Polyethylene.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

A. Thermostat: Low voltage with subbase to control compressor and evaporator fan.

1. Compressor time delay.
2. 24-hour time control of system stop and start.
3. Liquid-crystal display indicating temperature, set-point temperature, time setting, operating mode, and fan speed.
4. Fan-speed selection including auto setting.

B. Automatic-reset timer to prevent rapid cycling of compressor.

C. Refrigerant Line Kits: Soft-annealed copper suction and liquid lines factory cleaned, dried, pressurized, and sealed; factory-insulated suction line with flared fittings at both ends.

D. Condensate Pump.

E. Provide BACnet interface communication card.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install units level and plumb.

B. Install evaporator-fan components using manufacturer's standard mounting devices securely fastened to building structure.

C. Install roof-mounted, compressor-condenser components on equipment supports. Anchor units to supports with removable, cadmium-plated fasteners.

D. Equipment Mounting:

1. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation and seismic control devices specified in Section 230548 – VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR HVAC.

E. Install and connect precharged refrigerant tubing to component's quick-connect fittings. Install tubing to allow access to unit.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Where piping is installed adjacent to unit, allow space for service and maintenance of unit.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

B. Perform tests and inspections.

1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.

2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

D. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.4 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.

1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain units.

******END OF SECTION******

SECTION 238129
VARIABLE-REFRIGERANT-FLOW HVAC SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes complete VRF HVAC system(s) including, but not limited to, delegated design and the following components to make a complete operating system(s) according to requirements indicated:
   1. Indoor, concealed, ducted units.
   2. Indoor, exposed, wall-mounted units.
   3. Indoor, recessed, ceiling mounted units.
   4. Outdoor, air-source, heat-pump units.
   5. Heat recovery control units.
   6. System controls.
   7. System refrigerant and oil.
   8. System condensate drain piping.
   9. System refrigerant piping.
   10. System control cable and raceways.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Air-Conditioning System Operation: System capable of operation with all zones in cooling only.

B. Heat-Pump System Operation: System capable of operation with all zones in either heating or cooling, but not with simultaneous heating and cooling zones that transfer heat between zones.

C. Heat Recovery System Operation: System capable of operation with simultaneous heating and cooling zones that transfer heat between zones.

D. HRCU: Heat Recovery Control Unit. HRCUs are used in heat recovery VRF HVAC systems to manage and control refrigerant between indoor units to provide simultaneous heating and cooling zones. "Heat Recovery Control Unit" is the term used by ASHRAE for what different manufacturers term as branch circuit controller, branch selector box, changeover box, flow selector unit, mode change unit, and other such terms.

E. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control, signaling power-limited circuits.

F. Plenum: A space forming part of the air distribution system to which one or more air ducts are connected. An air duct is a passageway, other than a plenum, for transporting air to or from heating, ventilating, or air-conditioning equipment.

G. Three-Pipe System Design: One high pressure refrigerant vapor line, one low pressure refrigerant vapor line, and one refrigerant liquid line connect a single outdoor unit or multiple manifold outdoor units in a single system to associated system HRCUs. One liquid line and refrigerant vapor line connect HRCUs to associated indoor units.

H. Two-Pipe System Design: One refrigerant vapor line and one refrigerant liquid line connect a single outdoor unit or multiple manifold outdoor units in a single system to associated system HRCUs. One refrigerant liquid line and refrigerant vapor line connect HRCUs to associated indoor units. HRCUs used in two pipe systems act as an intermediate heat exchanger and include diverting valves and gas/liquid separators to move high and low pressure refrigerant between indoor units.

I. VRF: Variable refrigerant flow.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for indoor and outdoor units and for HRCUs.
2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
3. Include operating performance at design conditions and at extreme maximum and minimum outdoor ambient conditions.
4. Include description of system controllers, dimensions, features, control interfaces and connections, power requirements, and connections.
5. Include system operating sequence of operation in narrative form for each unique indoor- and outdoor-unit and HRCU control.
6. Include description of control software features.
7. Include total refrigerant required and a comprehensive breakdown of refrigerant required by each system installed.
8. Include refrigerant type and data sheets showing compliance with requirements indicated.

9. For system design software.
10. Indicate location and type of service access.

B. Shop Drawings: For VRF HVAC systems.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting attachment details.
2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.
4. Include diagrams and details of refrigerant piping and tubing showing installation requirements for manufacturer-furnished divided flow fittings.
5. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Delegated-Design Submittals:

1. Include design calculations for selecting vibration isolators and for designing vibration isolation bases.
2. Include design calculations with corresponding diagram of refrigerant piping and tubing sizing for each system installed.
3. Include design calculations with corresponding floor plans indicating that refrigerant concentration limits are within allowable limits of ASHRAE 15 and governing codes.
4. Include calculations showing that system travel distance for refrigerant piping and controls cabling are within horizontal and vertical travel distances set by manufacturer. Provide a comparison table for each system installed.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Plans, elevations, sections, and details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Suspended ceiling components.
2. Structural floors, roofs and associated members to which equipment, piping, ductwork, cables, and conduit will be attached.
3. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
4. Wall-mounted controllers located in finished space showing relationship to light switches, fire-alarm devices, and other installed devices.

5. Size and location of access doors and panels installed behind walls and inaccessible ceilings for products installed behind walls and requiring access.
6. Items penetrating finished ceiling including the following:
    a. Luminaires.
    b. Air outlets and inlets.
    c. Speakers.
    d. Sprinklers.
    e. Service access panels.

B. Qualification Data:

1. For Installer: Certificate from VRF HVAC system manufacturer certifying that Installer has successfully completed prerequisite training administered by manufacturer for proper installation of systems, including but not limited to, equipment, piping, controls, and accessories indicated and furnished for installation.
    a. Retain copies of Installer certificates on-site and make available on request.
2. For VRF HVAC system manufacturer.
3. For VRF HVAC system provider.

C. Product Certificates: For each type of product.

D. Source quality-control reports.

E. Field quality-control reports.

F. Sample Warranties: For manufacturer's warranties.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For VRF HVAC systems to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

B. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation:

1. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
2. Program Software Backup: On CD or DVD, USB media, or approved cloud storage platform, complete with data files.
3. Device address list.
4. Printout of software application and graphic screens.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Filters:
    a. One set(s) for each unit with replaceable filters.
    b. One set(s) for each unit type and unique size of washable filters.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Factory-Authorized Service Representative Qualifications:

1. Authorized representative of, and trained by, VRF HVAC system manufacturer.
2. Demonstrated past experience with products being installed for period within five consecutive years before time of bid.
3. Demonstrated past experience on five projects of similar complexity, scope, and value.
    a. Each person assigned to Project shall have demonstrated past experience.
4. Staffing resources of competent and experienced full-time employees that are assigned to execute work according to schedule.
5. Service and maintenance staff assigned to support Project during warranty period.
6. Product parts inventory to support ongoing system operation for a period of not less than five years after Substantial Completion.
7. VRF HVAC system manufacturer's backing to take over execution of Work if necessary to comply with requirements indicated. Include Project-specific written letter, signed by manufacturer's corporate officer, if requested.

B. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by VRF HVAC system manufacturer.

1. Each employee shall be certified by manufacturer for proper installation of systems, including, but not limited to, equipment, piping, controls, and accessories indicated and furnished for installation.
2. Installer certification shall be valid and current for duration of Project.
3. Retain copies of Installer certificates on-site and make available on request.

4. Each person assigned to Project shall have demonstrated past experience.
    a. Demonstrated past experience with products being installed for period within three consecutive years before time of bid.
    b. Demonstrated past experience on five projects of similar complexity, scope, and value.
5. Installers shall have staffing resources of competent, trained, and experienced full-time employees that are assigned to execute work according to schedule.

C. ISO Compliance: System equipment and components furnished by VRF HVAC system manufacturer shall be manufactured in an ISO 9001 and ISO 14001 facility.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver and store products in a clean and dry place.

B. Comply with manufacturer's written rigging and installation instructions for unloading and moving to final installed location.

C. Handle products carefully to prevent damage, breaking, denting, and scoring. Do not install damaged products.

D. Protect products from weather, dirt, dust, water, construction debris, and physical damage.

1. Retain factory-applied coverings on equipment to protect finishes during construction and remove just prior to operating unit.
2. Cover unit openings before installation to prevent dirt and dust from entering inside of units. If required to remover coverings during unit installation, reapply coverings over openings after unit installation and remove just prior to operating unit.

E. Replace installed products damaged during construction.

1.10 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace equipment and components that fail(s) in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    a. Structural failures.
    b. Faulty operation.

c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering and use.

2. Warranty Period:
   a. For Compressor: 10 year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.
   b. For Parts, Including Controls: 10 year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.
   c. For Labor: 10 year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Daikin AC (Americas), Inc.
2. Johnson Controls, Inc.
3. Mitsubishi Electric & Electronics USA, Inc.
4. Trane Company (The).

B. Source Limitations: Obtain products from single source from single manufacturer including, but not limited to, the following:

1. Indoor and outdoor units, including accessories.
2. Controls and software.
3. HRCUs.
4. Refrigerant isolation valves.
5. Specialty refrigerant pipe fittings.

2.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Direct-expansion (DX) VRF HVAC system(s) with variable capacity in response to varying cooling and heating loads. System shall consist of multiple indoor units, HRCUs, outdoor unit(s), piping, controls, and electrical power to make complete operating system(s) complying with requirements indicated.

1. Two-pipe or three-pipe system design.
2. System(s) operation, air-conditioning heat pump or heat recovery as indicated on Drawings.
3. Each system with one refrigerant circuit shared by all indoor units connected to system.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

C. AHRI Compliance: System and equipment performance certified according to AHRI 1230 and products listed in AHRI directory.

D. ASHRAE Compliance:

1. ASHRAE 15: For safety code for mechanical refrigeration.
2. ASHRAE 62.1: For indoor air quality.
3. ASHRAE 135: For control network protocol with remote communication.
4. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: For system and component energy efficiency.

E. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 1995.

2.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional specialist, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design complete and operational VRF HVAC system(s) complying with requirements indicated.

1. Provide system refrigerant calculations.
    a. Refrigerant concentration limits shall be within allowable limits of ASHRAE 15 and governing codes.
    b. Indicate compliance with manufacturer's maximum vertical and horizontal travel distances. Prepare a comparison table for each system showing calculated distances compared to manufacturer's maximum allowed distances.
2. System Refrigerant Piping and Tubing:
    a. Arrangement: Arrange piping to interconnect indoor units, HRCUs, and outdoor unit(s) in compliance with manufacturer requirements and requirements indicated.
    b. Routing: Conceal piping above ceilings and behind walls to maximum extent possible.
    c. Sizing: Size piping system, using a software program acceptable to manufacturer, to provide performance requirements indicated. Consider requirements to accommodate future change requirements.
3. System Controls:
    a. Network arrangement.
    b. Network interface with other building systems.
    c. Product selection.

d. Sizing.

B. Service Access:

1. Provide and document service access requirements.
2. Locate equipment, system isolation valves, and other system components that require service and inspection in easily accessible locations. Avoid locations that are difficult to access if possible.
3. Where serviceable components are installed behind walls and above inaccessible ceilings, provide finished assembly with access doors or panels to gain access. Properly size the openings to allow for service, removal, and replacement.
4. If less than full and unrestricted access is provided, locate components within an 18-inch reach of the finished assembly.
5. Where ladder access is required to service elevated components, provide an installation that provides for sufficient access within ladder manufacturer's written instructions for use.
6. Comply with OSHA regulations.

C. System Design and Installation Requirements:

1. Design and install systems indicated according to manufacturer's recommendations and written instructions.
2. Where manufacturer's requirements differ from requirements indicated, contact Architect for direction. The most stringent requirements should apply unless otherwise directed in writing by Architect.

D. System Adaptability to Future Changes: Arrange and size system refrigerant piping to accommodate future changes to system without having to resize and replace existing refrigerant piping.

1. Future changes to system(s) indicated on Drawings.

E. Isolation of Equipment: Provide isolation valves to isolate each HRCU, indoor unit and outdoor unit for service, removal, and replacement without interrupting system operation.

F. System Capacity Ratio: The sum of connected capacity of all indoor units shall be within the following range of outdoor-unit rated capacity:

1. Not less than 50 percent.
2. Not more than 130 percent.
3. Range acceptable to manufacturer.

G. System Turndown: Stable operation down to 20 percent of outdoor-unit capacity.

H. System Auto Refrigerant Charge: Each system shall have an automatic refrigerant charge function to ensure the proper amount of refrigerant is installed in system.

I. Outdoor Conditions:

1. Suitable for outdoor ambient conditions encountered.
   a. Design equipment and supports to withstand wind loads of governing code and ASCE/SEI 7.
   b. Design equipment and supports to withstand snow and ice loads of governing code and ASCE/SEI 7.
   c. Provide corrosion-resistant coating for components and supports where located in coastal or industrial climates that are known to be harmful to materials and finishes.
2. Maximum System Operating Outdoor Temperature: See Drawings.
3. Minimum System Operating Outdoor Temperature: See Drawings.

J. Thermal Movements: Allow for controlled thermal movements from ambient, surface, and system temperature changes.

K. Capacities and Characteristics: As indicated on Drawings.

2.4 INDOOR, CONCEALED, DUCTED UNITS

A. Description: Factory-assembled complete unit with components, piping, wiring, and controls required for mating to ductwork, piping, power, and controls field connections.

B. Cabinet:

1. Material: Galvanized steel.
2. Insulation: Manufacturer's standard internal insulation, complying with ASHRAE 62.1, to provide thermal resistance and prevent condensation.
3. Duct Connections: Extended collar or flange, or designated exterior cabinet surface, designed for attaching field-installed ductwork.
4. Mounting: Manufacturer-designed provisions for field installation.
5. Internal Access: Removable panels or hinged doors of adequate size for field access to internal components for inspection, cleaning, service, and replacement.

C. DX Coil Assembly:

1. Coil Casing: Aluminum, galvanized, or stainless steel.
2. Coil Fins: Aluminum, mechanically bonded to tubes, with arrangement required by performance.
3. Coil Tubes: Copper, of diameter and thickness required by performance.
4. Expansion Valve: Electronic modulating type with linear or proportional characteristics.
5. Unit Internal Tubing: Copper tubing with brazed joints.
6. Unit Internal Tubing Insulation: Manufacturer's standard insulation, of thickness to prevent condensation.
7. Field Piping Connections: Manufacturer's standard.
8. Factory Charge: Dehydrated air or nitrogen.

9. Testing: Factory pressure tested and verified to be without leaks.

D. Drain Assembly:

1. Pan: Non-ferrous material, with bottom sloped to low point drain connection.
2. Condensate Removal: Unit-mounted pump or other integral lifting mechanism, capable of lifting drain water to an elevation above top of cabinet.
3. Field Piping Connection: Non-ferrous material.

E. Fan and Motor Assembly:

1. Fan(s):
   a. Direct-drive arrangement.
   b. Single or multiple fans connected to a common motor shaft and driven by a single motor.
   c. Fabricated from non-ferrous components or ferrous components with corrosion-resistant finish.
   d. Wheels statically and dynamically balanced.
2. Motor: Brushless dc or electronically commutated with permanently lubricated bearings.
3. Motor Protection: Integral protection against thermal, overload, and voltage fluctuations.
4. Speed Settings and Control: Two (low, high), three (low, medium, high), or more than three speed settings or variable speed with a speed range of least 50 percent.
5. Vibration Control: Integral isolation to dampen vibration transmission.

F. Filter Assembly:

1. Access: Bottom, side, or rear to accommodate field installation without removing ductwork and to accommodate filter replacement without need for tools.
2. Media:
    a. Washable: Manufacturer's standard filter with antimicrobial treatment.

G. Unit Accessories:

1. Outdoor Air Ventilation Kit: Connection, motorized damper, and control sized to allow sequence of operation indicated on Drawings.
2. Remote Room Temperature Sensor Kit: Wall-mounted, hardwired room temperature sensor kit for use in rooms that do not have room temperature measurement.

H. Unit Controls:

1. Enclosure: Metal, suitable for indoor locations.
2. Factory-Installed Controller: Configurable digital control.
3. Factory-Installed Sensors:
    a. Unit inlet air temperature.
    b. Coil entering refrigerant temperature.
    c. Coil leaving refrigerant temperature.
4. Features and Functions:
    a. Self-diagnostics.
    b. Time delay.
    c. Auto-restart.
    d. External static pressure control.
    e. Auto operation mode.
    f. Manual operation mode.
    g. Filter service notification.
    h. Power consumption display.
    i. Drain assembly high water level safety shutdown and notification.
    j. Run test switch.
5. Communication: Network communication with other indoor and outdoor units.
6. Cable and Wiring: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.
7. Field Connection: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.

I. Unit Electrical:

1. Enclosure: Metal, suitable for indoor locations.

2. Field Connection: Single point connection to power unit and integral controls.
3. Disconnecting Means: Factory-mounted circuit breaker or switch.
4. Control Transformer: Manufacturer's standard. Coordinate requirements with field power supply.
5. Wiring: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.
6. Raceways: Enclose line voltage wiring in metal raceways.

2.5 INDOOR, EXPOSED, WALL-MOUNTED UNITS

A. Description: Factory-assembled complete unit with components, piping, wiring, and controls required for mating to piping, power, and controls field connections.

B. Cabinet:

1. Material: Painted steel, or coated steel frame covered by a plastic cabinet, with an architectural acceptable finish suitable for tenant occupancy on exposed surfaces.
2. Insulation: Manufacturer's standard internal insulation, complying with ASHRAE 62.1, to provide thermal resistance and prevent condensation.
3. Mounting: Manufacturer-designed provisions for field installation.
4. Internal Access: Removable panels of adequate size for field access to internal components for inspection, cleaning, service, and replacement.

C. DX Coil Assembly:

1. Coil Casing: Aluminum, galvanized, or stainless steel.
2. Coil Fins: Aluminum, mechanically bonded to tubes, with arrangement required by performance.
3. Coil Tubes: Copper, of diameter and thickness required by performance.
4. Expansion Valve: Electronic modulating type with linear or proportional characteristics.
5. Unit Internal Tubing: Copper tubing with brazed joints.
6. Unit Internal Tubing Insulation: Manufacturer's standard insulation, of thickness to prevent condensation.
7. Field Piping Connections: Manufacturer's standard.
8. Factory Charge: Dehydrated air or nitrogen.
9. Testing: Factory pressure tested and verified to be without leaks.

D. Drain Assembly:

1. Pan: Non-ferrous material, with bottom sloped to low point drain connection.
2. Condensate Removal: Gravity.
    a. If a floor drain is not available at unit, provide unit with field-installed condensate pump accessory.
3. Field Piping Connection: Non-ferrous material.

E. Fan and Motor Assembly:

1. Fan(s):
    a. Direct-drive arrangement.
    b. Single or multiple fans connected to a common motor shaft and driven by a single motor.
    c. Fabricated from non-ferrous components or ferrous components with corrosion protection finish.
    d. Wheels statically and dynamically balanced.
2. Motor: Brushless dc or electronically commutated with permanently lubricated bearings.
3. Motor Protection: Integral protection against thermal, overload, and voltage fluctuations.
4. Speed Settings and Control: Two (low, high), three (low, medium, high), or more than three speed settings or variable speed with a speed range of least 50 percent.
5. Vibration Control: Integral isolation to dampen vibration transmission.

F. Filter Assembly:

1. Access: Front, to accommodate filter replacement without the need for tools.
2. Washable Media: Manufacturer's standard filter with antimicrobial treatment.

G. Grille Assembly: Manufacturer's standard discharge grille mounted in top or front face of unit cabinet.

H. Unit Accessories:

1. Remote Room Temperature Sensor Kit: Wall-mounted, hardwired room temperature sensor kit for use in rooms that do not have room temperature measurement.
2. Condensate Pump: Integral reservoir and control with electrical power connection through unit power.

I. Unit Controls:

1. Enclosure: Manufacturer's standard, and suitable for indoor locations.
2. Factory-Installed Controller: Configurable digital control.
3. Features and Functions: Self-diagnostics, time delay, auto-restart, external static pressure control, auto operation mode, manual operation mode, filter service notification, power consumption display, drain assembly high water level safety shutdown and notification, run test switch.
4. Communication: Network communication with other indoor units and outdoor unit(s).
5. Cable and Wiring: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.
6. Field Connection: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.

J. Unit Electrical:

1. Enclosure: Manufacturer's standard, and suitable for indoor locations.
2. Field Connection: Single point connection to power entire unit and integral controls.
3. Disconnecting Means: Factory-mounted circuit breaker or switch, complying with NFPA 70.
4. Control Transformer: Manufacturer's standard. Coordinate requirements with field power supply.
5. Wiring: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.
6. Raceways: Enclose line voltage wiring in metal raceways to comply with NFPA 70.

2.6 INDOOR, RECESSED, CEILING-MOUNTED UNITS

A. Description: Factory-assembled complete unit with components, piping, wiring, and controls required for mating to ductwork, piping, power, and controls field connections.

B. Cabinet:

1. Material: Painted steel, or coated steel frame covered by a plastic cabinet, with an architectural acceptable finish suitable for tenant occupancy on exposed surfaces.
2. Insulation: Manufacturer's standard internal insulation, complying with ASHRAE 62.1, to provide thermal resistance and prevent condensation.
3. Mounting: Manufacturer-designed provisions for field installation.

4. Internal Access: Removable panels of adequate size for field access to internal components for inspection, cleaning, service, and replacement.

C. DX Coil Assembly:

1. Coil Casing: Aluminum, galvanized, or stainless steel.
2. Coil Fins: Aluminum, mechanically bonded to tubes, with arrangement required by performance.
3. Coil Tubes: Copper, of diameter and thickness required by performance.
4. Expansion Valve: Electronic modulating type with linear or proportional characteristics.
5. Internal Tubing: Copper tubing with brazed joints.
6. Internal Tubing Insulation: Manufacturer's standard insulation, of thickness to prevent condensation.
7. Field Piping Connections: Manufacturer's standard.
8. Factory Charge: Dehydrated air or nitrogen.
9. Testing: Factory pressure tested and verified to be without leaks.

D. Drain Assembly:

1. Pan: Non-ferrous material, with bottom sloped to low point drain connection.
2. Condensate Removal: Unit-mounted pump or other integral lifting mechanism, capable of lifting drain water to an elevation above top of cabinet.
3. Field Piping Connection: Non-ferrous material.

E. Fan and Motor Assembly:

1. Fan(s):
   a. Direct-drive arrangement.
   b. Single or multiple fans connected to a common motor shaft and driven by a single motor.
   c. Fabricated from non-ferrous components or ferrous components with corrosion protection finish.
   d. Wheels statically and dynamically balanced.
2. Motor: Brushless dc or electronically commutated with permanently lubricated bearings.
3. Motor Protection: Integral protection against thermal, overload, and voltage fluctuations.
4. Speed Settings and Control: Two (low, high), three (low, medium, high), or more than three speed settings or variable speed with a speed range of least 50 percent.

5. Vibration Control: Integral isolation to dampen vibration transmission.

F. Filter Assembly:

1. Access: Bottom, to accommodate filter replacement without the need for tools.
2. Media:
   a. Washable: Manufacturer's standard filter with antimicrobial treatment.

G. Discharge-Air Grille Assembly: Mounted in bottom of unit cabinet.

1. Discharge Pattern: One-, two-, three-, or four-way throw as indicated on Drawings.
   a. Discharge Pattern Adjustment: Field-adjustable limits for up and down range of motion.
   b. Discharge Pattern Closure: Ability to close individual discharges of units with multiple patterns.
2. Motorized Vanes: Modulating up and down flow pattern for uniform room air distribution.

H. Return-Air Grille Assembly: Manufacturer's standard grille mounted in bottom of unit cabinet.

I. Outdoor Air Ventilation Connection: Sheet metal knockout for optional connection to outdoor air ventilation duct.

J. Unit Accessories:

1. Outdoor Air Ventilation Kit: Connection, motorized damper, and control to satisfy unit control sequence of operation indicated on Drawings.
2. Remote Room Temperature Sensor Kit: Wall-mounted, hardwired room temperature sensor kit for use in rooms that do not have room temperature measurement.

K. Unit Controls:

1. Enclosure: Manufacturer's standard, and suitable for indoor locations.
2. Factory-Installed Controller: Configurable digital control.
3. Factory-Installed Sensors: Unit inlet air temperature Coil entering refrigerant temperature Coil leaving refrigerant temperature.
4. Features and Functions: Self-diagnostics, time delay, auto-restart, external static pressure control, auto operation mode, manual

operation mode, filter service notification, power consumption display, drain assembly high water level safety shutdown and notification, run test switch.

5. Communication: Network communication with other indoor units and outdoor unit(s).
6. Cable and Wiring: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.
7. Field Connection: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.

L. Unit Electrical:

1. Enclosure: Manufacturer's standard, and suitable for indoor locations.
2. Field Connection: Single point connection to power entire unit and integral controls.
3. Disconnecting Means: Factory-mounted circuit breaker or switch, complying with NFPA 70.
4. Control Transformer: Manufacturer's standard. Coordinate requirements with field power supply.
5. Wiring: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.
6. Raceways: Enclose line voltage wiring in metal raceways to comply with NFPA 70.

2.7 OUTDOOR, AIR-SOURCE HEAT RECOVERY UNITS

A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested complete unit with components, piping, wiring, and controls required for mating to piping, power, and controls field connections.

1. Specially designed for use in systems with simultaneous heating and cooling.
2. Systems shall consist of one unit, or multiple unit modules that are designed by variable refrigerant system manufacturer for field interconnection to make a single refrigeration circuit that connects multiple indoor units.
3. All units installed shall be from the same product development generation.

B. Cabinet:

1. Galvanized steel and coated with a corrosion-resistant finish.
   a. Coating with documented salt spray test performance of 1000 hours according ASTM B117 surface scratch test (SST) procedure.

2. Mounting: Manufacturer-designed provisions for field installation.
3. Internal Access: Removable panels or hinged doors of adequate size for field access to internal components for inspection, cleaning, service, and replacement.

C. Compressor and Motor Assembly:

1. One or more positive-displacement, direct-drive and hermetically sealed scroll compressor(s) with inverter drive and turndown to 15 percent of rated capacity.
2. Protection: Integral protection against the following:
   a. High refrigerant pressure.
   b. Low oil level.
   c. High oil temperature.
   d. Thermal and overload.
   e. Voltage fluctuations.
   f. Phase failure and phase reversal.
   g. Short cycling.
   h. .
3. Speed Control: Variable to automatically maintain refrigerant suction and condensing pressures while varying refrigerant flow to satisfy system cooling and heating loads.
4. Vibration Control: Integral isolation to dampen vibration transmission.
5. Oil management system to ensure safe and proper lubrication over entire operating range.
6. Crankcase heaters with integral control to maintain safe operating temperature.
7. Fusible plug.

D. Condenser Coil Assembly:

1. Plate Fin Coils:
   a. Casing: Aluminum, galvanized, or stainless steel.
   b. Fins: Aluminum or copper, mechanically bonded to tubes, with arrangement required by performance.
   c. Tubes: Copper, of diameter and thickness required by performance.
2. Aluminum Microchannel Coils:
   a. Series of flat tubes containing a series of multiple, parallel-flow microchannels layered between refrigerant header manifolds.
   b. Single- or multiple-pass arrangement.
   c. Construct fins, tubes, and header manifolds of aluminum alloy.
3. Coating: Corrosion resistant.

4. Hail Protection: Provide condenser coils with louvers, baffles, or hoods to protect against hail damage.

E. Condenser Fan and Motor Assembly:

1. Fan(s): Propeller type.
   a. Direct-drive arrangement.
   b. Fabricated from non-ferrous components or ferrous components with corrosion protection finish to match performance indicated for condenser coil.
   c. Statically and dynamically balanced.
2. Fan Guards: Removable safety guards complying with OSHA regulations. If using metal materials, coat with corrosion-resistant coating to match performance indicated for condenser coil.
3. Motor(s): Brushless dc or electronically commutated with permanently lubricated bearings and rated for outdoor duty.
4. Motor Protection: Integral protection against thermal, overload, and voltage fluctuations.
5. Speed Settings and Control: Variable speed with a speed range of least 75 percent.
6. Vibration Control: Integral isolation to dampen vibration transmission.

F. Drain Pan: If required by manufacturer's design, provide unit with non-ferrous drain pan with bottom sloped to a low point drain connection.

G. Unit Controls:

1. Enclosure: Manufacturer's standard, and suitable for unprotected outdoor locations.
2. Factory-Installed Controller: Configurable digital control.
3. Factory-Installed Sensors:
   a. Refrigerant suction temperature.
   b. Refrigerant discharge temperature.
   c. Outdoor air temperature.
   d. Refrigerant high pressure.
   e. Refrigerant low pressure.
   f. Oil level.
4. Features and Functions: Self-diagnostics, time delay, auto-restart, fuse protection, auto operation mode, manual operation mode, night setback control, power consumption display, run test switch equalize run time between multiple same components.
5. Communication: Network communication with indoor units and other outdoor unit(s).
6. Cable and Wiring: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.

7. Field Connection: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.

H. Unit Electrical:

1. Enclosure: Metal, similar to enclosure, and suitable for unprotected outdoor locations.
2. Field Connection: Single point connection to power entire unit and integral controls.
3. Disconnecting Means: Factory-mounted circuit breaker or switch, complying with NFPA 70.
4. Control Transformer: Manufacturer's standard. Coordinate requirements with field power supply.
5. Wiring: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.
6. Raceways: Enclose line voltage wiring in metal raceways to comply with NFPA 70.

I. Unit Hardware: Zinc-plated steel, or stainless steel. Coat exposed surfaces with additional corrosion-resistant coating if required to prevention corrosion when exposed to salt spray test for 1000 hours according ASTM B117.

J. Unit Piping:

1. Unit Tubing: Copper tubing with brazed joints.
2. Unit Tubing Insulation: Manufacturer's standard insulation, of thickness to prevent condensation.
3. Field Piping Connections: Manufacturer's standard.
4. Factory Charge: Dehydrated air or nitrogen.
5. Testing: Factory pressure tested and verified to be without leaks.

2.8 HEAT RECOVERY CONTROL UNITS (HRCUs)

A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested complete unit with components, piping, wiring, and controls required for mating to piping, power, and controls field connections.

1. Specially designed for use in systems with simultaneous heating and cooling.
2. Systems shall consist of one unit, or multiple unit that are designed by variable refrigerant system manufacturer for field interconnection to make a single refrigeration circuit that connects multiple indoor units.

B. Cabinet:

1. Galvanized-steel construction.
2. Insulation: Manufacturer's standard internal insulation to provide thermal resistance and prevent condensation.
3. Mounting: Manufacturer-designed provisions for field installation.
4. Internal Access: Removable panels or hinged doors of adequate size for field access to internal components for inspection, cleaning, service, and replacement.

C. Drain Pan: If required by manufacturer's design, provide unit with non-ferrous drain pan with bottom sloped to a low point drain connection.

D. Refrigeration Assemblies and Specialties:

1. Specially designed by manufacturer for type of VRF HVAC system being installed, either two or three pipe.
2. Each refrigerant branch circuit shall have refrigerant control valve(s) to control refrigerant flow.
3. Spares: Each heat recovery control unit shall include at least two branch circuit port(s) for future use.
4. Each system piping connection upstream of heat recovery unit shall be fitted with an isolation valve to allow for service to any heat recovery control unit in the system without interrupting operation of the system.
5. Each branch circuit connection shall be fitted with an isolation valve and capped service port to allow for service to any individual branch circuit without interrupting operation of the system.
    a. If not available as an integral part of the heat recovery control unit, isolation valves shall be field installed adjacent to the unit pipe connection.

E. Unit Controls:

1. Enclosure: Manufacturer's standard, and suitable for indoor locations.
2. Factory-Installed Controller: Configurable digital control.
3. Features and Functions: Self-diagnostics, fuse protection,.
4. Communication: Network communication with indoor units and outdoor unit(s).
5. Cable and Wiring: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.
6. Field Connection: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.

F. Unit Electrical:

1. Enclosure: Metal, similar to enclosure, and suitable for indoor locations.
2. Field Connection: Single point connection to power entire unit and integral controls.
3. Disconnecting Means: Factory-mounted circuit breaker or switch, complying with NFPA 70.
4. Control Transformer: Manufacturer's standard. Coordinate requirements with field power supply.
5. Wiring: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.
6. Raceways: Enclose line voltage wiring in metal raceways to comply with NFPA 70.

G. Unit Piping:

1. Unit Tubing: Copper tubing with brazed joints.
2. Unit Tubing Insulation: Manufacturer's standard insulation, of thickness to prevent condensation.
3. Field Piping Connections: Manufacturer's standard.
4. Factory Charge: Dehydrated air or nitrogen.
5. Testing: Factory pressure tested and verified to be without leaks.

2.9 SYSTEM CONTROLS

A. General Requirements:

1. Network: Indoor units, HRCUs, and outdoor units shall include integral controls and connect through a TIA-485A or manufacturer-selected control network.
2. Network Communication Protocol: Manufacturer proprietary or open control communication between interconnected units.
3. Integration with Building Automation System: ASHRAE 135, BACnet IP and certified by BACnet Testing Lab (BTL), including the following:
    a. Ethernet connection via RJ-45 connectors and port with transmission at 100 Mbps or higher.
    b. Integration devices shall be connected to local uninterruptible power supply unit(s) to provide at least 5 minutes of battery backup operation after a power loss.
    c. Integration shall include control monitoring scheduling change of value notifications.
4. Operator Interface:
    a. Operators shall interface with system and unit controls through the following:
        1) Operator interfaces integral to controllers.
        2) Integration with Building Automation System.

b. Users shall be capable of interface with controllers for indoor units control to extent privileges are enabled. Control features available to users shall include the following:
   1) On/off control.
   2) Temperature set-point adjustment.

2.10 SYSTEM REFRIGERANT AND OIL

A. Refrigerant:

1. As required by VRF HVAC system manufacturer for system to comply with performance requirements indicated.
2. ASHRAE 34, Class A1 refrigerant classification.
3. R-410a.

B. Oil:

1. As required by VRF HVAC system manufacturer and to comply with performance requirements indicated.

2.11 SYSTEM CONDENSATE DRAIN PIPING

A. If more than one material is listed, material selection is Contractor's option.

B. Copper Tubing:

1. Drawn-Temper Tubing: According to ASTM B88, Type M or Type DWV according to ASTM B306.
2. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.
3. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.
4. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B32, lead-free alloys, and water-flushable flux according to ASTM B813.

2.12 SYSTEM REFRIGERANT PIPING

A. Refrigerant Piping:

1. Copper Tube: ASTM B280, Type ACR.
2. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.
3. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M.

B. Refrigerant Tubing Kits:

1. Furnished by VRF HVAC system manufacturer.

2. Factory-rolled and -bundled, soft-copper tubing with tubing termination fittings at each end.
3. Standard one-piece length for connecting to indoor units.
4. Pre-insulated with flexible elastomeric insulation of thickness to comply with governing energy code and sufficient to eliminate condensation.
5. Factory Charge: Dehydrated air or nitrogen.

C. Divided-Flow Specialty Fittings: Where required by VRF HVAC system manufacturer for proper system operation, VRF HVAC system manufacturer shall furnish specialty fittings with identification and instructions for proper installation by Installer.

D. Refrigerant Isolation Ball Valves:

1. Description: Uni-body full port design, rated for maximum system temperature and pressure, and factory tested under pressure to ensure tight shutoff. Designed for valve operation without removing seal cap.
2. Seals: Compatible with system refrigerant and oil. Seal service life of at least 20 years.
3. Valve Connections: Flare or sweat depending on size.

2.13 MATERIALS

A. Steel:

1. ASTM A36/A36M for carbon structural steel.
2. ASTM A568/A568M for steel sheet.

B. Stainless Steel:

1. Manufacturer's standard grade for casing.
2. Manufacturer's standard type, ASTM A240/A240M for bare steel exposed to airstream or moisture.

C. Galvanized Steel: ASTM A653/A653M.

D. Aluminum: ASTM B209.

E. Corrosion-Resistant Coating: Coat with a corrosion-resistant coating capable of withstanding a 3000-hour salt-spray test according to ASTM B117.

1. Standards:
   a. ASTM B117 for salt spray.

b. ASTM D2794 for minimum impact resistance of 100 in-lb.
c. ASTM B3359 for cross-hatch adhesion of 5B.

2. Application: Immersion Spray.
3. Thickness: 1 mil.
4. Gloss: Minimum gloss of 60 on a 60-degree meter.

2.14 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Factory Tests: Test and inspect factory-assembled equipment.

B. Equipment will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports for historical record. Submit reports only if requested.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine products before installation. Reject products that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.

C. Examine roughing-in for piping and tubing to verify actual locations of connections before equipment installation.

D. Examine roughing-in for ductwork to verify actual locations of connections before equipment installation.

E. Examine roughing-in for wiring and conduit to verify actual locations of connections before equipment installation.

F. Examine walls, floors, roofs, and outdoor pads for suitable conditions where equipment will be installed.

G. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.

H. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Clearance:

1. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances for service and maintenance.
2. Maintain clearances required by governing code.

B. Loose Components: Install components, devices, and accessories furnished by manufacturer, with equipment, that are not factory mounted.

1. Loose components shall be installed by manufacturer's service representative.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF INDOOR UNITS

A. Install units to be level and plumb while providing a neat and finished appearance.

B. Unless otherwise required by VRF HVAC system manufacturer, support ceiling-mounted units from structure above using threaded rods; minimum rod size of 3/8 inch.

C. Adjust supports of exposed and recessed units to draw units tight to adjoining surfaces.

D. Protect finished surfaces of ceilings, floors, and walls that come in direct contact with units. Refinish or replaced damaged areas after units are installed.

E. In rooms with ceilings, conceal piping and tubing, controls, and electrical power serving units above ceilings.

F. In rooms without ceiling, arrange piping and tubing, controls, and electrical power serving units to provide a neat and finished appearance.

G. Provide lateral bracing if needed to limit movement of suspended units to not more than 0.25 inch.

H. For floor- and wall-mounted units that are exposed, conceal piping and tubing, controls, and electrical power serving units within walls.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF OUTDOOR UNITS

A. Install units to be level and plumb while providing a neat and finished appearance.

B. Install outdoor units on support structures indicated on Drawings.

3.5 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping and tubing systems. Install piping and tubing as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.

B. Install piping and tubing in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.

C. Install piping and tubing at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.

D. Install piping and tubing above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.

E. Install piping and tubing to permit valve servicing.

F. Install piping and tubing at indicated slopes.

G. Install piping and tubing free of sags.

H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

I. Install piping and tubing to allow application of insulation.

J. Install groups of pipes and tubing parallel to each other, spaced to permit applying insulation with service access between insulated piping and tubing.

K. Install sleeves for piping and tubing penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."

L. Install escutcheons for piping and tubing penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 230518 "Escutcheons for HVAC Piping."

3.6 INSTALLATION OF SYSTEM CONDENSATE DRAIN PIPING

A. General Requirements for Drain Piping and Tubing:

1. Install a union in piping at each threaded unit connection.

2. Install an adjustable stainless-steel hose clamp with adjustable gear operator on unit hose connections. Tighten clamp to provide a leak-free installation.
3. If required for unit installation, provide a trap assembly in drain piping to prevent air circulated through unit from passing through drain piping. Comply with more stringent of the following:
   a. Details indicated on Drawings.
   b. Manufacturer's requirements.
   c. Governing codes.
   d. In the absence of requirements, comply with requirements of ASHRAE handbooks.
4. Extend drain piping from units with drain connections to drain receptors as indicated on Drawings. If not indicated on Drawings, terminate drain connection at nearest accessible location that is not exposed to view by occupants.
5. Provide each 90-degree change in direction with a Y- or T-fitting. Install a threaded plug connection in the dormant side of fitting or future use as a service cleanout.

B. Gravity Drains:

1. Slope piping from unit connection toward drain termination at a constant slope of not less than one percent.

C. Pumped Drains:

1. If unit condensate pump or lift mechanism is not included with an integral check valve, install a full-size check valve in each branch pipe near unit connection to prevent backflow into unit.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF REFRIGERANT PIPING

A. Refrigerant Tubing Kits:

1. Unroll and straighten tubing to suit installation. Deviations in straightness of exposed tubing shall be unnoticeable to observer.
2. Support tubing using hangers and supports indicated at intervals not to exceed 5 feet. Minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
3. Prepare tubing ends and make mating connections to provide a pressure tight and leak-free installation.

B. Install refrigerant piping according to ASHRAE 15 and governing codes.

C. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.

D. Install piping as short and direct as possible, with a minimum number of joints and fittings.

E. Arrange piping to allow inspection and service of equipment. Install valves and specialties in accessible locations to allow for service and inspection. Install access doors or panels as if valves or equipment requiring maintenance is concealed behind finished surfaces.

F. Install refrigerant piping and tubing in protective conduit where installed belowground.

G. Install refrigerant piping and tubing in rigid or flexible conduit in locations where exposed to mechanical damage.

H. Unless otherwise required by VRF HVAC system manufacturer, slope refrigerant piping and tubing as follows:

1. Install horizontal hot-gas discharge piping and tubing with a uniform slope downward away from compressor.
2. Install horizontal suction lines with a uniform slope downward to compressor.
3. Install traps to entrain oil in vertical runs.
4. Liquid lines may be installed level.

I. When brazing, remove or protect components that could be damaged by heat.

J. Before installation, clean piping, tubing, and fittings to cleanliness level required by VRF HVAC system manufacturer.

K. Joint Construction:

1. Ream ends of tubes and remove burrs.
2. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of tube and fittings before assembly.
3. Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter.
    a. Use Type BCuP (copper-phosphorus) alloy for joining copper fittings with copper tubing.
    b. Use Type BAg (cadmium-free silver) alloy for joining copper with bronze.

3.8 ELECTRICAL INSTALLATION

A. Comply with requirements indicated on Drawings and in applicable Division 26 Sections.

B. To extent electrical power is required for system equipment, components, and controls, and is not indicated on Drawings and addressed in the Specifications, the design for such electrical power shall be delegated to VRF HVAC system provider.

1. Delegated design of electrical power to equipment, components and controls, and associated installation shall be included at no additional cost to Owner.

C. Connect field electrical power source to each separate electrical device requiring field electrical power. Coordinate termination point and connection type with Installer.

D. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for wiring connections.

E. Comply with requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems" for grounding connections.

F. Install nameplate or acrylic label with self-adhesive back for each electrical connection indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.

1. Nameplate shall be laminated phenolic layers of black with engraved white letters. Letters at least 1/2 inch high.
2. Locate nameplate or label where easily visible.

G. Comply with requirements in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for raceway selection and installation requirements for boxes, conduits, and wireways as supplemented or revised in this Section.

1. Outlet boxes shall be no smaller than 2 inches wide, 3 inches high, and 2-1/2 inches deep.
2. Flexible metal conduit shall not be used.

H. Comply with TIA-569-D for pull-box sizing and length of conduit and number of bends between pull points.

I. Install manufactured conduit sweeps and long-radius elbows if possible.

J. Install metal conduits with grounding bushings and connect with grounding conductor to grounding system.

3.9 INSTALLATION OF SYSTEM CONTROL CABLE

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Installation Method:

1. Install cables in raceways except as follows:
   a. Within equipment and associated control enclosures.
   b. In gypsum board partitions where cable may be enclosed within wall cavity.
2. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.

C. General Requirements for Cabling:

1. Comply with TIA-568-C Series of standards.
2. Comply with BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems."
3. Terminate all conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, and cross-connect and patch panels.
4. Cables may not be spliced and shall be continuous from terminal to terminal. Do not splice cable.
5. Cables serving a common system may be grouped in a common raceway. Install control cable in separate raceway from power wiring. Do not group conductors from different systems or different voltages.
6. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches and not more than 6 inches from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
7. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii, but not less than radii specified in BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems." Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
8. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
9. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before dereeling. Do not use heat lamps for heating.
10. Pulling Cable: Comply with BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems." Monitor cable pull tensions.
11. Support: Do not allow cables to lie on removable ceiling tiles or access panels.
12. Secure: Fasten securely in place with hardware specifically designed and installed so as to not damage cables.
13. Provide strain relief.
14. Keep runs short. Allow extra length for connecting to terminals.
15. Do not bend cables in a radius less than 10 times the cable OD.
16. Use sleeves or grommets to protect cables from vibration at points where they pass around sharp corners and through penetrations.

17. Ground wire shall be copper, and grounding methods shall comply with IEEE C2. Demonstrate ground resistance.

D. Balanced Twisted-Pair Cable Installation:

1. Comply with TIA-568-C.2.
2. Do not untwist balanced twisted-pair cables more than 1/2 inch at the point of termination to maintain cable geometry.

E. Open-Cable Installation:

1. Suspend copper cable not in a wireway or pathway a minimum of 8 inches above ceilings by cable supports not more than 30 inches apart.
2. Cable shall not be run through or on structural members or in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items. Do not run cables between structural members and corrugated panels.

F. Separation from EMI Sources: Comply with BICSI TDMM and TIA-569-D recommendations for separating unshielded cable from potential EMI sources including electrical power wiring and equipment.

3.10 GROUNDING INSTALLATION

A. For low-voltage control cabling, comply with requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

3.11 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system equipment, piping, tubing, and valves. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

B. Identify system electrical and controls components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

1. Identify each control cable on each end and at each terminal with a number-coded identification tag. Each cable shall have a unique tag.

3.12 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage VRF HVAC system manufacturer's service representative to advise and assist installers; witness testing; and

observe and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including controls and connections.

1. Field service shall be performed by an employee or a factory-trained and -authorized service representative of VRF HVAC system manufacturer whose primary job responsibilities are to provide direct technical support of its products.
    a. Additional factory-authorized representatives may assist with completion of certain activities only if supervised by manufacturer's employee. A factory-authorized representative shall not provide assistance without manufacturer's employee supervision.
2. Manufacturer shall provide on-site visits during the course of construction at installation milestones indicated. System Installer shall coordinate each visit in advance to give manufacturer sufficient notice to plan the visit.
    a. First Visit: Kick-off meeting.
    b. Second Visit: At approximately 25 percent completion of system(s).
    c. Third Visit: At approximately 50 percent completion of system(s).
    d. Fourth Visit: At approximately 75 percent completion of system(s).
    e. Fifth Visit: Final inspection before system startup.
3. Kick-off Meeting:
    a. Meeting shall include system Installer and other related trades with sole purpose of reviewing VRF HVAC system installation requirements and close coordination required to make a successful installation.
    b. Meeting shall be held at Project site and scheduled at a mutually agreed to time that occurs before the start of any part of system installation.
    c. Meeting shall cover the following as a minimum requirement:
        1) Review of latest issue of Contract Documents, Drawings, and Specifications, relevant to VRF HVAC systems.
        2) Manufacturer's installation requirements specific to systems being installed.
        3) Review of all relevant VRF HVAC system submittals, including delegated-design submittals.
        4) Required field activities related installation of VRF HVAC system.
        5) Project team communication protocol, contact information, and exchange of responsibilities for each party involved, including manufacturer, supplier, system Installer, and other related trades.

4. Site Visits: Activities for each site visit shall include the following:
   a. Meet with VRF HVAC system Installer to discuss field activities, issues, and suggested methods to result in a successful installation.
   b. Offer technical support to Installer and related trades as related to VRF system(s) being installed.
   c. Review progress of VRF HVAC system(s) installation for strict compliance with manufacturer's requirements.
   d. Advise and if necessary assist Installer with updating related refrigerant calculations and system documentation.
   e. Issue a report for each visit, documenting the visit.
      1) Report to include name and contact information of individual making the visit.
      2) Date(s) and time frames while on-site.
      3) Names and contact information of people meeting with while on-site.
      4) Clearly identify and list each separate issue that requires resolution. For each issue, provide a unique identification number, relevant importance, specific location or equipment identification, description of issue, recommended corrective action, and follow-up requirements needed. Include a digital photo for clarification if deemed to be beneficial.
5. Final Inspection before Startup:
   a. Before inspection, Installer to provide written request to manufacturer stating the system is fully installed according manufacturer's requirements and ready for final inspection.
   b. All system equipment and operating components shall be inspected. If components are inaccessible for inspection, they shall be made accessible before the final inspection can be completed.
   c. Manufacturer shall provide a comprehensive inspection of all equipment and each operating component that comprise the complete system(s). Inspection shall follow a detailed checklist specific to each equipment and operating component.
   d. Inspection reports for indoor units shall include, but not be limited to, the following:
      1) Unit designation on Drawings.
      2) Manufacturer model number.
      3) Serial number.
      4) Network address, if applicable.
      5) Each equipment setting.
      6) Mounting, supports, and restraints properly installed.
      7) Proper service clearance provided.

8) Wiring and power connections correct.
9) Line-voltage reading(s) within acceptable range.
10) Wiring and controls connections correct.
11) Low-voltage reading(s) within an acceptable range.
12) Controller type and model controlling unit.
13) Controller location.
14) Temperature settings and readings within an acceptable range.
15) Humidity settings and readings within an acceptable range.
16) Condensate removal acceptable.
17) Fan settings and readings within an acceptable range.
18) Unit airflow direction within an acceptable range.
19) If applicable, fan external static pressure setting.
20) Filter type and condition acceptable.
21) Noise level within an acceptable range.
22) Refrigerant piping properly connected and insulated.
23) Condensate drain piping properly connected and insulated.
24) If applicable, ductwork properly connected.
25) If applicable, external interlocks properly connected.
26) Remarks.

e. Inspection reports for outdoor units shall include, but not be limited to, the following:
1) Unit designation on Drawings.
2) Manufacturer model number.
3) Serial number.
4) Network address, if applicable.
5) Each equipment setting.
6) Mounting, supports, and restraints properly installed.
7) Proper service clearance provided.
8) Wiring and power connections correct.
9) Line-voltage reading(s) within acceptable range.
10) Wiring and controls connections correct.
11) Low-voltage reading(s) within an acceptable range.
12) Condensate removal acceptable.
13) Noise level within an acceptable range.
14) Refrigerant piping properly connected and insulated.
15) Condensate drain piping properly connected and insulated.
16) Remarks.

f. Installer shall provide manufacturer with the requested documentation and technical support during inspection.
g. Installer shall correct observed deficiencies found by the inspection.
h. Upon completing the on-site inspection, manufacturer shall provide a written report with complete documentation describing each inspection step, the result, and any corrective action required.
i. If corrective action is required by Installer that cannot be completed during the same visit, provide additional visits, as required, until deficiencies are resolved and systems are deemed ready for startup.
j. Final report shall indicate the system(s) inspected are installed according to manufacturer's requirements and are ready for startup.

B. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of manufacturer's service representative:

1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
2. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

C. Refrigerant Tubing Positive Pressure Testing:

1. Comply with more stringent of VRF HVAC system manufacturer's requirements and requirements indicated.
2. After completion of tubing installation, pressurize tubing systems to a test pressure of not less than 1.5 times VRF HVAC system operating pressure, but not less than 600 psig, using dry nitrogen.
3. Successful testing shall maintain a test pressure for a continuous and uninterrupted period of 24 hours. Allowance for pressure changes attributed to changes in ambient temperature are acceptable.
4. Prepare test report to record the following information for each test:
   a. Name of person starting test, company name, phone number, and e-mail address.
   b. Name of manufacturer's service representative witnessing test, company name, phone number, and e-mail address.

c. Detailed description of extent of tubing tested.
d. Date and time at start of test.
e. Test pressure at start of test.
f. Outdoor temperature at start of test.
g. Name of person ending test, company name, phone number, and e-mail address.
h. Date and time at end of test.
i. Test pressure at end of test.
j. Outdoor temperature at end of test.
k. Remarks:

5. Submit test reports for Project record.

D. Refrigerant Tubing Evacuation Testing:

1. Comply with more stringent of VRF HVAC system manufacturer's requirements and requirements indicated.
2. After completion of tubing positive-pressure testing, evacuate tubing systems to a pressure of 500 microns.
3. Successful testing shall maintain a test pressure for a continuous and uninterrupted period of one hour(s) with no change.
4. Prepare test report to record the following information for each test:
   a. Name of person starting test, company name, phone number, and e-mail address.
   b. Name of manufacturer's service representative witnessing test, company name, phone number, and e-mail address.
   c. Detailed description of extent of tubing tested.
   d. Date and time at start of test.
   e. Test pressure at start of test.
   f. Outdoor temperature at start of test.
   g. Name of person ending test, company name, phone number, and e-mail address.
   h. Date and time at end of test.
   i. Test pressure at end of test.
   j. Outdoor temperature at end of test.
   k. Remarks:
5. Submit test reports for Project record.
6. Upon successful completion of evacuation testing, system shall be charged with refrigerant.

E. System Refrigerant Charge:

1. Using information collected from the refrigerant tubing evacuation testing, system Installer shall consult variable refrigerant system manufacturer to determine the correct system refrigerant charge.

2. Installer shall charge system following VRF HVAC system manufacturer's written instructions.
3. System refrigerant charging shall be witnessed by system manufacturer's representative.
4. Total refrigerant charge shall be recorded and permanently displayed at the system's outdoor unit.

F. Products will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

G. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.13 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Engage a VRF HVAC system manufacturer's service representative to perform system(s) startup service.

1. Service representative shall be an employee or a factory-trained and -authorized service representative of VRF HVAC system manufacturer.
2. Complete startup service of each separate system.
3. Complete system startup service according to manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Startup checks shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

1. Check control communications of equipment and each operating component in system(s).
2. Check each indoor unit's response to demand for cooling and heating.
3. Check each indoor unit's response to changes in airflow settings.
4. Check each indoor unit, HRCU, and outdoor unit for proper condensate removal.
5. Check sound levels of each indoor and outdoor unit.

C. Installer shall accompany manufacturer's service representative during startup service and provide manufacturer's service representative with requested documentation and technical support during startup service.

1. Installer shall correct deficiencies found during startup service for reverification.

D. System Operation Report:

1. After completion of startup service, manufacturer shall issue a report for each separate system.

2. Report shall include complete documentation describing each startup check, the result, and any corrective action required.
3. Manufacturer shall electronically record not less than two hours of continuous operation of each system and submit with report for historical reference.
    a. All available system operating parameters shall be included in the information submitted.

E. Witness:

1. Invite Owner to witness startup service procedures.
2. Provide written notice not less than 20 business days before start of startup service.

3.14 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust equipment and components to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.

B. Adjust initial temperature and humidity set points. Adjust initial airflow settings and discharge airflow patterns.

C. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges according to VRF HVAC system manufacturer's written instructions, and as indicated.

D. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

3.15 PROTECTION

A. Protect products from moisture and water damage. Remove and replace products that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.

B. Protect equipment from physical damage. Replace equipment with physical damage that cannot be repaired to new condition. Observable surface imperfections shall be grounds for removal and replacement.

C. Protect equipment from electrical damage. Replace equipment suffering electrical damage.

D. Cover and seal openings of equipment to keep inside of equipment clean. Do not remove covers until finish work is complete.

3.16 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a VRF HVAC system manufacturer's employed training instructor or factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain entire system.

B. Instructor:

1. Instructor shall be factory trained and certified by VRF HVAC system manufacturer with current training on the system(s), equipment, and controls that are installed.
2. Instructor's credentials shall be submitted for review by Architect and Owner before scheduling training.
3. Instructor(s) primary job responsibility shall be Owner training.
4. Instructor(s) shall have not less than three years of training experience with VRF HVAC system manufacturer and past training experience on at least three projects of comparable size and complexity.

C. Schedule and Duration:

1. Schedule training with Owner at least 20 business days before first training session.
2. Training shall occur before Owner occupancy.
3. Training shall be held at mutually agreed date and time during normal business hours.
4. Each training day shall not exceed eight hours of training. Daily training schedule shall allow time for one-hour lunch period and 15-minute break after every two hours of training.
5. Perform not less than eight total hours of training.

D. Location: Owner shall provide a suitable on-site location to host classroom training.

E. Training Attendees: Assume three people.

F. Training Attendance: For record purposes, document training attendees at the start of each new training session. Record attendee's name, signature, phone number, and e-mail address.

G. Training Format: Individual training modules shall include classroom training followed by hands-on field demonstration and training.

H. Training Materials: Provide training materials in electronic format to each attendee.

1. Include instructional videos showing general operation and maintenance that are coordinated with operation and maintenance manuals.
2. Video record each classroom training session and submit an electronic copy to Owner before requesting Owner acceptance of training.

I. Acceptance: Obtain Architect or Owner written acceptance that training is complete and requirements indicated have been satisfied.

******END OF SECTION******

SECTION 238239
UNIT HEATERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes cabinet unit heaters with centrifugal fans and hot-water heating coils and propeller unit heaters with hot-water electric-resistance heating coils.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. CWP: Cold working pressure.

B. DDC: Direct digital control.

C. PTFE: Polytetrafluoroethylene plastic.

D. TFE: Tetrafluoroethylene plastic.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details.
2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Include location and size of each field connection.
4. Include details of anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment.
5. Include equipment schedules to indicate rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
6. Indicate location and arrangement of piping valves and specialties.

7. Indicate location and arrangement of integral controls.
8. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.

D. Samples for Initial Selection: Finish colors for units with factory-applied color finishes.

E. Samples for Verification: Finish colors for each type of cabinet unit heater indicated with factory-applied color finishes.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans, reflected ceiling plans, and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Suspended ceiling components.
2. Structural members to which cabinet unit heaters will be attached.
3. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
5. Items penetrating finished ceiling, including the following:
    a. Lighting fixtures.
    b. Air outlets and inlets.
    c. Speakers.
    d. Sprinklers.
    e. Access panels.
6. Perimeter moldings for exposed or partially exposed cabinets.

B. Seismic Qualification Data: Submit certification that cabinet unit heaters, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC." Include the following:

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Include detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

C. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For cabinet unit heaters, propeller unit heaters, wall and ceiling unit heaters to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Cabinet Unit-Heater Filters: Furnish one spare filter(s) for each filter installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. For cabinet unit heaters and unit heaters - Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Berko; Marley Engineered Products.
2. QMark; Marley Engineered Products.
3. Trane.

2.2 DESCRIPTION – CABINET UNIT HEATERS

A. Factory-assembled and -tested unit complying with AHRI 440.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

C. Comply with UL 2021.

2.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."

B. ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."

2.4 COIL SECTION INSULATION

A. Insulation Materials: ASTM C 1071; surfaces exposed to airstream shall have aluminum-foil facing to prevent erosion of glass fibers.

1. Thickness: 1/2-inch.
2. Thermal Conductivity (k-Value): 0.26 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. at 75 deg F mean temperature.
3. Fire-Hazard Classification: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to ASTM E 84.
4. Adhesive: Comply with ASTM C 916 and with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
5. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

2.5 CABINETS

A. Material: Steel with baked-enamel finish with manufacturer's custom paint, in color selected by Architect.

1. Vertical Unit, Exposed Front Panels: Minimum 0.0528-inch- thick galvanized sheet steel, removable panels with channel-formed edges secured with tamperproof cam fasteners.
2. Horizontal Unit, Exposed Bottom Panels: Minimum 0.0528-inch-thick galvanized sheet steel, removable panels secured with tamperproof cam fasteners and safety chain.
3. Recessed Flanges: Steel, finished to match cabinet.
4. Control Access Door: Key operated.
5. Base: Minimum 0.0528-inch-thick steel, finished to match cabinet, 4-inches high with leveling bolts.
6. Extended Piping Compartment: 8-inch- wide piping end pocket.
7. False Back: Minimum 0.0428-inch-thick steel, finished to match cabinet.

2.6 FILTERS

A. Minimum Arrestance: And a minimum efficiency reporting value (MERV) according to ASHRAE 52.2.

1. Washable Foam: 70 percent arrestance and MERV 3.
2. Glass Fiber Treated with Adhesive: 80 percent arrestance and MERV 5.
3. Pleated: 90 percent arrestance and MERV 7.

2.7 COILS

A. Hot-Water Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins spaced no closer than 0.1 inch and rated for a minimum working pressure of 200 psig and a maximum entering-water temperature of 220 deg F. Include manual air vent and drain.

2.8 CONTROLS

A. Fan and Motor Board: Removable.

1. Fan: Forward curved, double width, centrifugal, directly connected to motor; thermoplastic or painted-steel wheels and aluminum, painted-steel, or galvanized-steel fan scrolls.
2. Motor: Permanently lubricated, multispeed; resiliently mounted on motor board. Comply with requirements in Section 23 05 13 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
3. Wiring Terminations: Connect motor to chassis wiring with plug connection.

B. Factory, Hot-Water Piping Package: ASTM B 88, Type L copper tube with wrought-copper fittings and brazed joints. Label piping to indicate service, inlet, and outlet.

1. Two-way, modulating control valve.
2. Hose Kits: Minimum 400-psig working pressure, and operating temperatures from 33 to 211 deg F. Tag hose kits to equipment designations.
   a. Length: 36-inches.
   b. Minimum Diameter: Equal to cabinet unit-heater connection size.
3. Two-Piece, Ball Valves: Bronze body with full-port, chrome-plated bronze ball; PTFE or TFE seats; and 600-psig minimum CWP rating and blowout-proof stem.
4. Calibrated-Orifice Balancing Valves: Bronze body, ball type, 125-psig working pressure, 250 deg F maximum operating temperature; with calibrated orifice or venture, connection for portable differential pressure meter with integral seals, threaded ends, and equipped with a memory stop to retain set position.
5. Automatic Flow-Control Valve: Brass or ferrous-metal body, 300-psig working pressure at 250 deg F, with removable, corrosion-resistant, tamperproof, self-cleaning piston spring; factory set to maintain constant indicated flow within plus or minus 10 percent of differential pressure range of 2 to 80 psig.
6. Y-Pattern, Hot-Water Strainers: Cast-iron body (ASTM A 126, Class B); 125-psig minimum working pressure; with threaded connections, bolted cover, perforated stainless-steel basket, and

bottom drain connection. Include minimum NPS 1/2 threaded pipe and full-port ball valve in strainer drain connection.

7. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.

C. Basic Unit Controls:

1. Control voltage transformer.
2. Wall-mounted thermostat with the following features:
   a. Heat-off switch.
   b. Fan on-auto switch.
   c. Manual fan-speed switch.
   d. Adjustable deadband.
   e. Concealed set point.
   f. Exposed indication.
   g. Deg F indication.

D. Electrical Connection: Factory-wired motors and controls for a single field connection.

2.9 DESCRIPTION – PROPELLER UNIT HEATERS

A. Assembly including casing, coil, fan, and motor in vertical and horizontal discharge configuration with adjustable discharge louvers.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

C. Comply with UL 2021.

D. Comply with UL 823.

2.10 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."

B. ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."

2.11 HOUSINGS

A. Finish: Manufacturer's standard baked enamel applied to factory-assembled and -tested propeller unit heaters before shipping.

B. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

C. Discharge Louver: Adjustable fin diffuser for horizontal units and conical diffuser for vertical units.

2.12 COILS

A. General Coil Requirements: Test and rate propeller unit-heater coils according to ASHRAE 33.

B. Electric-Resistance Heating Coil: Nickel-chromium heating wire, free from expansion noise and 60-Hz hum, embedded in magnesium oxide refractory and sealed in steel or corrosion-resistant metallic sheath with fins no closer than 0.16-inch. Element ends shall be enclosed in terminal box. Fin surface temperature shall not exceed 550 deg F at any point during normal operation.

1. Circuit Protection: One-time fuses in terminal box for overcurrent protection and limit controls for high-temperature protection of heaters.
2. Wiring Terminations: Stainless-steel or corrosion-resistant material.

2.13 FAN AND MOTOR

A. Fan: Propeller type with aluminum wheel directly mounted on motor shaft in the fan venturi.

B. Motor: Permanently lubricated,. Comply with requirements in Section 23 05 13 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

2.14 CONTROLS

A. Control Devices:

1. Unit-mounted, fan-speed switch.
2. Wall-mounted thermostat.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas to receive cabinet unit heaters for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine roughing-in for piping and/or electrical connections to verify actual locations before unit-heater installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install unit heaters to comply with NFPA 90A.

B. Install unit heaters level and plumb.

C. Suspend cabinet unit heaters from structure with elastomeric hangers. Vibration isolators are specified in Section 23 05 48 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."

D. Suspend propeller unit heaters from structure with all-thread hanger rods and spring hangers. Hanger rods and attachments to structure are specified in Section 23 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment." Vibration hangers are specified in Section 23 05 48 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."

E. Install wall-mounted thermostats and switch controls in electrical outlet boxes at heights to match lighting controls. Verify location of thermostats and other exposed control sensors with Drawings and room details before installation.

F. Ground equipment according to Section 26 05 26 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

G. Connect wiring according to Section 26 05 19 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

H. Install new filters in each fan-coil unit within two weeks of Substantial Completion.

3.3 CONNECTIONS - CABINET UNIT HEATERS

A. Piping installation requirements are specified in Section 23 21 13 "Hydronic Piping," Section 23 21 16 "Hydronic Piping Specialties." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Install piping adjacent to machine to allow service and maintenance.

C. Connect piping to cabinet unit heater's factory, hot-water piping package. Install the piping package if shipped loose.

D. Comply with safety requirements in UL 1995.

E. Unless otherwise indicated, install union and gate or ball valve on supply-water connection and union and calibrated balancing valve on return-water connection of cabinet unit heater. Hydronic specialties are specified in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping" and Section 23 21 16 "Hydronic Piping Specialties."

F. Ground equipment according to Section 26 05 26 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

G. Connect wiring according to Section 26 05 19 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.4 CONNECTIONS – PROPELLER UNIT HEATERS

A. Ground equipment according to Section 26 05 26 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

B. Connect wiring according to Section 26 05 19 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
2. Operate electric heating elements through each stage to verify proper operation and electrical connections.
3. Test and adjust controls and safety devices. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

B. Units will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust initial temperature set points.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain cabinet unit heaters.

******END OF SECTION******

SECTION 260050
ELECTRICAL WORK GENERAL PROVISIONS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. The Contractor shall furnish all labor, materials, equipment and incidentals required to make ready for use the complete electrical systems as shown on the Drawings and as specified hereinafter.

B. In conjunction with other sections of Division 26 00 00, the work shall include furnishing and installing the following:

1. Electrical service extension of existing power
2. Electrical raceway systems
3. Wires and cables
4. Panelboards
5. Miscellaneous equipment
6. Grounding
7. Circuit breakers

C. Make all necessary connections at "packaged" equipment furnished under other sections and Divisions of these specifications.

D. Make all connections to equipment and devices furnished under Division 26 00 00 and other sections of these specifications except as otherwise specified.

E. It is the intent of these specifications that the electrical system shall be suitable in every way for the service required. All material and all work which may be reasonably implied as being incidental to the work of this section shall be furnished at no extra cost to the Owner.

1.2 RELATED WORK

A. The Contractor's attention is directed to the General Conditions, Supplementary Conditions.

1.3 CODES, INSPECTIONS, PERMITS AND FEES

A. All material and installations shall be in accordance with the latest edition of the Massachusetts Electrical Code (527 CMR 12.00) and all applicable local codes and ordinances.

B. Obtain all necessary permits and pay all fees for permits and inspections.

1.4 INTERPRETATION OF DRAWINGS

A. The Drawings are not intended to show exact locations of conduit runs.

B. Each three phase circuit shall be run in a separate conduit unless otherwise shown on the Drawings.

C. Unless otherwise approved by the Engineer, all conduit shall be installed concealed wherever possible.

D. Where circuits are shown as "home runs" all necessary fittings and boxes shall be provided for a complete raceway installation.

E. Any work installed contrary to or without review by the Engineer shall be subject to change as required by the Engineer, and no extra compensation will be allowed for making these changes.

F. The locations of equipment, shown on the drawings are approximate only. Exact locations shall be as determined by the Engineer during construction. Obtain in the field all information relevant to the placing of electrical work and in case of any interference with other work, proceed as required by the Engineer and furnish all labor and materials necessary to complete the work in an acceptable manner.

G. Circuit layouts are not intended to show the number of fittings, or other installation details. Furnish all labor and materials necessary to install and place in satisfactory operation all power, lighting and other electrical systems shown. Additional circuits shall be installed wherever needed to conform to the specific requirements of the equipment.

H. All connections to equipment shall be made as required and in accordance with the approved shop and setting drawings.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

In accordance with requirements of general specifications, submit the following:

A. Complete shop drawings shall be submitted for but not limited to the following equipment: panelboards, service cabinets, load centers, conduit and wire.

B. The manufacturer's name, product designation or catalog number, descriptive literature and data shall be submitted for the following material and equipment:

1. Conduit
2. Boxes and fittings
3. Wires, cables and appurtenances
4. Wiring devices and appurtenances
5. Circuit breakers
6. Panelboards
7. Grounding Equipment
8. Control devices and stations

C. Prior to submittal, all shop drawings shall be checked for accuracy and conformance to contract requirements. Shop drawings shall bear the date checked and shall be accompanied by a statement that the shop drawings have been examined for conformity to the specifications and drawings. This statement shall also list all discrepancies with the specifications and drawings. Shop drawings not so checked and noted shall be returned.

D. The Engineer's review shall be only for conformance with the design concept of the project and compliance with the specifications and drawings. The responsibility of, and the necessity of, furnishing materials and workmanship required by the specifications and drawings which may not be indicated on the shop drawings is included under the work of this section.

E. The responsibility for all dimensions to be confirmed and correlated at the job site and for coordination of this work with the work of all other trades is also included under the work of this section.

1.6 MANUFACTURER'S SERVICES

Furnish manufacturer's services for testing and start up when required.

1.7 ELECTRIC SERVICES

A. The Service to the space will be as shown on the drawings, and as required.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. The materials used in all systems shall be new, unused and as hereinafter specified. All materials, where not specified, shall be of the very best of their respective kinds. Samples of materials or manufacturer's specifications shall be submitted for review as required by the Engineer.

B. Materials and equipment used shall be Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc. listed.

C. Electrical equipment shall at all times during construction be adequately protected against mechanical injury or damage by water. Electrical equipment shall not be stored out of doors. Electrical equipment shall be stored in dry permanent shelters. If any apparatus has been damaged, such damage shall be repaired at no additional cost. If any apparatus has been subject to possible injury by water, it shall be thoroughly dried out and put through such special tests as required by the Engineer or shall be replaced at no additional cost to the Owner.

D. The Contractor's attention is directed to the requirements of the various sections of Division 26 and 28 for additional product specifications.

2.2 MANUFACTURER'S NAMEPLATES

A. All equipment shall have the manufacturer's name, address, model or type designation, serial number and all applicable ratings clearly marked thereon in a location which can be readily observed after installation. The required information may be die stamped into the surface of the equipment or may be marked on durable nameplates permanently fastened to the equipment.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION:

A. Provide and place all sleeves for conduit penetrations through floors, walls, partitions, etc. Locate all necessary slots and inserts for electrical work and place in form before concrete is poured.

B. Equipment shall be kept upright at all times. When equipment has to be tilted for ease of passage through restricted areas during transportation, the manufacturer shall be required to brace the equipment suitably to insure that the tilting does not impair the functional integrity of the equipment.

3.2 RECORD DRAWINGS

As the work progresses, legibly record (red line) all field changes on a set of project contract drawings. Prior to Substantial Completion of the project, submit the red lined prints to the Engineer for use in preparation of the record drawings.

3.3 TESTS AND ADJUSTMENTS

A. Test all systems furnished under Division 26 and repair or replace all defective work. Make all necessary adjustments to the systems and equipment and instruct the Owner's personnel in the proper operation of the systems and equipment.

******END OF SECTION******

SECTION 260519
LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Copper building wire rated 600 V or less.
2. Metal-clad cable, Type MC, rated 600 V or less.
3. Connectors, splices, and terminations rated 600 V and less.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Product Schedule: Indicate type, use, location, and termination locations.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COPPER BUILDING WIRE

A. Description: Flexible, insulated and uninsulated, drawn copper current-carrying conductor with an overall insulation layer or jacket, or both, rated 600 V or less.

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Alpha Wire Company.
2. American Bare Conductor.
3. Belden Inc.
4. Okonite Company (The).
5. Southwire Company.

C. Standards:

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
2. RoHS compliant.

3. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."

D. Conductors: Copper, complying with ASTM B 3 for bare annealed copper and with ASTM B 8 for stranded conductors.

E. Conductor Insulation:

1. Type RHH and Type RHW-2: Comply with UL 44.
2. Type THHN and Type THWN-2: Comply with UL 83.
3. Type XHHW-2: Comply with UL 44.

2.2 METAL-CLAD CABLE, TYPE MC

A. Description: A factory assembly of one or more current-carrying insulated conductors in an overall metallic sheath.

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Alpha Wire Company.
2. Belden Inc.
3. Okonite Company (The).
4. Southwire Company.

C. Standards:

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
2. Comply with UL 1569.
3. RoHS compliant.
4. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."

D. Circuits:

1. Single circuit.

E. Conductors: Copper, complying with ASTM B 3 for bare annealed copper and with ASTM B 8 for stranded conductors.

F. Ground Conductor: Bare.

G. Conductor Insulation:

1. Type TFN/THHN/THWN-2: Comply with UL 83.
2. Type XHHW-2: Comply with UL 44.

H. Armor: Steel, interlocked.

I. Jacket: PVC applied over armor.

2.3 CONNECTORS AND SPLICES

A. Description: Factory-fabricated connectors, splices, and lugs of size, ampacity rating, material, type, and class for application and service indicated; listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

1. 3M Electrical Products.
2. AFC Cable Systems; a part of Atkore International.
3. Hubbell Power Systems, Inc.
4. O-Z/Gedney; a brand of Emerson Industrial Automation.
5. Thomas & Betts Corporation; A Member of the ABB Group.

C. Jacketed Cable Connectors: For steel and aluminum jacketed cables, zinc die-cast with set screws, designed to connect conductors specified in this Section.

D. Lugs: One piece, seamless, designed to terminate conductors specified in this Section.

1. Material: Copper.
2. Type: One hole with standard barrels.
3. Termination: Compression.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONDUCTOR MATERIAL APPLICATIONS

A. Feeders: Copper; solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.

B. Branch Circuits: Copper. Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.

3.2 CONDUCTOR INSULATION AND MULTICONDUCTOR CABLE APPLICATIONS AND WIRING METHODS

A. Service Entrance: Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway.

B. Exposed Feeders: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.

C. Feeders Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, Partitions, and Crawlspaces: Metal-clad cable, Type MC.

D. Exposed Branch Circuits, Including in Crawlspaces: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.

E. Branch Circuits Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, and Partitions: Metal-clad cable, Type MC.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

A. Conceal cables in finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated.

B. Complete raceway installation between conductor and cable termination points according to Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" prior to pulling conductors and cables.

C. Use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant where necessary; compound used must not deteriorate conductor or insulation. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.

D. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire/cable grips that will not damage cables or raceway.

E. Install exposed cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces of exposed structural members and follow surface contours where possible.

F. Support cables according to Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."

3.4 CONNECTIONS

A. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A-486B.

B. Make splices, terminations, and taps that are compatible with conductor material and that possess equivalent or better mechanical strength and insulation ratings than un-spliced conductors.

C. Wiring at Outlets: Install conductor at each outlet, with at least 12-inches of slack.

3.5 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify and color-code conductors and cables according to Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

B. Identify each spare conductor at each end with identity number and location of other end of conductor and identify as spare conductor.

3.6 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies.

3.7 FIRESTOPPING

A. Apply fire stopping to electrical penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly.

******END OF SECTION******

SECTION 260526
GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes grounding and bonding systems and equipment.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Plans showing dimensioned as-built locations of grounding features specified in "Field Quality Control" Article.

B. Qualification Data: For testing agency.

C. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and maintenance data.

1. Plans showing as-built, dimensioned locations of grounding features specified in "Field Quality Control" Article.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Certified by NETA.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Comply with UL 467 for grounding and bonding materials and equipment.

2.2 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Burndy; Part of Hubbell Electrical Systems.
2. ERICO International Corporation.
3. Harger Lightning & Grounding.
4. O-Z/Gedney; a brand of Emerson Industrial Automation.
5. SIEMENS Industry, Inc.; Energy Management Division.
6. Thomas & Betts Corporation; A Member of the ABB Group.

2.3 CONDUCTORS

A. Insulated Conductors: Copper wire or cable insulated for 600 V unless otherwise required by applicable Code or authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Bare Copper Conductors:

1. Solid Conductors: ASTM B 3.
2. Stranded Conductors: ASTM B 8.
3. Tinned Conductors: ASTM B 33.
4. Bonding Cable: 28 kc mil, 14 strands of No. 17 AWG conductor, ¼-inch in diameter.
5. Bonding Conductor: No. 4 or No. 6 AWG, stranded conductor.
6. Bonding Jumper: Copper tape, braided conductors terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8-inches wide and 1/16-inch thick.

C. Grounding Bus: Predrilled rectangular bars of annealed copper, 1/4 by 4-inches in cross section, with 9/32-inch holes spaced 1-1/8-inches apart.

2.4 CONNECTORS

A. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for applications in which used and for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items connected.

B. Bus-Bar Connectors: Mechanical type, cast silicon bronze, solderless compression-type wire terminals, and long-barrel, two-bolt connection to ground bus bar.

C. Beam Clamps: Mechanical type, terminal, ground wire access from four directions, with dual, tin-plated or silicon bronze bolts.

D. Cable-to-Cable Connectors: Compression type, copper or copper alloy.

E. Conduit Hubs: Mechanical type, terminal with threaded hub.

F. Signal Reference Grid Clamp: Mechanical type, stamped-steel terminal with hex head screw.

G. Straps: Solid copper, copper lugs. Rated for 600 A.

H. Water Pipe Clamps:

1. Mechanical type, two pieces with stainless-steel bolts.
   a. Material: Copper
   b. Listed for direct burial.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATIONS

A. Conductors: Install solid conductor for No. 8 AWG and smaller, and stranded conductors for No. 6 AWG and larger unless otherwise indicated.

B. Grounding Bus: Install as indicated on plans.

1. Install bus horizontally, on insulated spacers 2-inches minimum from wall, 6-inches above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.

C. Conductor Terminations and Connections:

1. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.

3.2 EQUIPMENT GROUNDING

A. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with all feeders and branch circuits.

B. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with the following items, in addition to those required by NFPA 70:

1. Feeders and branch circuits.
2. Lighting circuits.
3. Receptacle circuits.
4. Flexible raceway runs.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Grounding Conductors: Route along shortest and straightest paths possible unless otherwise indicated or required by Code. Avoid obstructing access or placing conductors where they may be subjected to strain, impact, or damage.

B. Bonding Straps and Jumpers: Install in locations accessible for inspection and maintenance except where routed through short lengths of conduit.

1. Bonding to Structure: Bond straps directly to basic structure, taking care not to penetrate any adjacent parts.
2. Bonding to Equipment Mounted on Vibration Isolation Hangers and Supports: Install bonding so vibration is not transmitted to rigidly mounted equipment.
3. Use exothermic-welded connectors for outdoor locations; if a disconnect-type connection is required, use a bolted clamp.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. After installing grounding system but before permanent electrical circuits have been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
2. Inspect physical and mechanical condition. Verify tightness of accessible, bolted, electrical connections with a calibrated torque wrench according to manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Grounding system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports. Identify any deficiencies and corrective action taken.

******END OF SECTION******

SECTION 26 05 29
HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Steel slotted support systems.
2. Conduit and cable support devices.
3. Support for conductors in vertical conduit.
4. Structural steel for fabricated supports and restraints.
5. Mounting, anchoring, and attachment components, including powder-actuated fasteners, mechanical expansion anchors, concrete inserts, clamps, through bolts, toggle bolts, and hanger rods.
6. Fabricated metal equipment support assemblies.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: For fabrication and installation details for electrical hangers and support systems.

1. Hangers. Include product data for components.
2. Slotted support systems.
3. Equipment supports.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and other details, drawn to scale, and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved.

B. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, for hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Seismic Performance: Hangers and supports shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.

1. The term "withstand" means "the supported equipment and systems will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the supported equipment and systems will be fully operational after the seismic event."

2.2 SUPPORT, ANCHORAGE, AND ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS

A. Steel Slotted Support Systems: Preformed steel channels and angles with minimum 13/32-inch-diameter holes at a maximum of 8-inches o. c. in at least one surface.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. Allied Tube & Conduit; a part of Atkore International.
   b. B-line, an Eaton business.
   c. ERICO International Corporation.
   d. Thomas & Betts Corporation; A Member of the ABB Group.

2. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.

3. Material for Channel, Fittings, and Accessories: Stainless steel, Type 316.

4. Channel Width: Selected for applicable load criteria.

5. Metallic Coatings: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and applied according to MFMA-4.

6. Painted Coatings: Manufacturer's standard painted coating applied according to MFMA-4.

7. Protect finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

B. Conduit and Cable Support Devices: Steel hangers, clamps, and associated fittings, designed for types and sizes of raceway or cable to be supported.

C. Support for Conductors in Vertical Conduit: Factory-fabricated assembly consisting of threaded body and insulating wedging plug or plugs for non-armored electrical conductors or cables in riser conduits. Plugs shall have number, size, and shape of conductor gripping pieces as required to suit

individual conductors or cables supported. Body shall be made of malleable iron.

D. Structural Steel for Fabricated Supports and Restraints: ASTM A 36/A 36M steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.

E. Mounting, Anchoring, and Attachment Components: Items for fastening electrical items or their supports to building surfaces include the following:

1. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened Portland cement concrete, steel, or wood, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
    a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
        1) Hilti, Inc.
        2) ITW Ramset/Red Head; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
        3) MKT Fastening, LLC.
2. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, stainless steel, for use in hardened Portland cement concrete, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
    a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
        1) B-line, an Eaton business.
        2) Empire Tool and Manufacturing Co., Inc.
        3) MKT Fastening, LLC.
3. Concrete Inserts: Steel or malleable-iron, slotted support system units are similar to MSS Type 18 units and comply with MFMA-4 or MSS SP-58.
4. Clamps for Attachment to Steel Structural Elements: MSS SP-58 units are suitable for attached structural element.
5. Through Bolts: Structural type, hex head, and high strength. Comply with ASTM A 325.
6. Toggle Bolts: Stainless-steel springhead type.
7. Hanger Rods: Threaded steel.

2.3 FABRICATED METAL EQUIPMENT SUPPORT ASSEMBLIES

A. Description: Welded or bolted structural-steel shapes, shop or field fabricated to fit dimensions of supported equipment.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATION

A. Comply with the following standards for application and installation requirements of hangers and supports, except where requirements on Drawings or in this Section are stricter:

1. NECA 1.
2. NECA 101
3. NECA 102.
4. NECA 105.
5. NECA 111.

B. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Section 26 05 33 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."

C. Maximum Support Spacing and Minimum Hanger Rod Size for Raceways: Space supports for EMT, IMC, and RMC as required by NFPA 70. Minimum rod size shall be ¼-inch in diameter.

D. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Install trapeze-type supports fabricated with steel slotted or other support system, sized so capacity can be increased by at least 25 percent in future without exceeding specified design load limits.

1. Secure raceways and cables to these supports with two-bolt conduit clamps

E. Spring-steel clamps designed for supporting single conduits without bolts may be used for 1-1/2-inch and smaller raceways serving branch circuits and communication systems above suspended ceilings, and for fastening raceways to trapeze supports.

3.2 SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except as specified in this article.

B. Raceway Support Methods: In addition to methods described in NECA 1, RMC may be supported by openings through structure members, according to NFPA 70.

C. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus

200 lb.

D. Mounting and Anchorage of Surface-Mounted Equipment and Components: Anchor and fasten electrical items and their supports to building structural elements by the following methods unless otherwise indicated by code:

1. To Wood: Fasten with lag screws or through bolts.
2. To New Concrete: Bolt to concrete inserts.
3. To Masonry: Approved toggle-type bolts on hollow masonry units and expansion anchor fasteners on solid masonry units.
4. To Existing Concrete: Expansion anchor fasteners.
5. Instead of expansion anchors, powder-actuated driven threaded studs provided with lock washers and nuts may be used in existing standard-weight concrete 4-inches thick or greater. Do not use for anchorage to lightweight-aggregate concrete or for slabs less than 4-inches thick.
6. To Steel: Beam clamps (MSS SP-58, Type 19, 21, 23, 25, or 27), complying with MSS SP-69.
7. To Light Steel: Sheet metal screws.
8. Items Mounted on Hollow Walls and Nonstructural Building Surfaces: Mount cabinets, panelboards, disconnect switches, control enclosures, pull and junction boxes, transformers, and other devices on slotted-channel racks attached to substrate by means that comply with seismic-restraint strength and anchorage requirements.

E. Drill holes for expansion anchors in concrete at locations and to depths that avoid the need for reinforcing bars.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF FABRICATED METAL SUPPORTS

A. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor electrical materials and equipment.
B. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

******END OF SECTION******

SECTION 260533
RACEWAYS AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Metal conduits and fittings.
2. Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: For custom enclosures and cabinets. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL CONDUITS AND FITTINGS

A. Metal Conduit:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. AFC Cable Systems; a part of Atkore International.
   b. Allied Tube & Conduit; a part of Atkore International.
   c. Electri-Flex Company.
   d. O-Z/Gedney; a brand of Emerson Industrial Automation.
   e. Perma-Cote.
   f. Plasti-Bond.
2. Listing and Labeling: Metal conduits, tubing, and fittings shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
3. GRC: Comply with ANSI C80.1 and UL 6.
4. ARC: Comply with ANSI C80.5 and UL 6A.
5. IMC: Comply with ANSI C80.6 and UL 1242.EMT: Comply with ANSI C80.3 and UL 797.
6. FMC: Comply with UL 1; zinc-coated steel.
7. LFMC: Flexible steel conduit with PVC jacket and complying with UL 360.

B. Metal Fittings: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 514B.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    a. AFC Cable Systems; a part of Atkore International.
    b. Allied Tube & Conduit; a part of Atkore International.
    c. Electri-Flex Company.
    d. O-Z/Gedney; a brand of Emerson Industrial Automation.
    e. Perma-Cote.
2. Listing and Labeling: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
3. Fittings, General: Listed and labeled for type of conduit, location, and use.
4. Fittings for EMT:
    a. Material: Steel.
    b. Type: Setscrew.
5. Expansion Fittings: Steel to match conduit type, complying with UL 651, rated for environmental conditions where installed, and including flexible external bonding jumper.

C. Joint Compound for IMC, GRC, or ARC: Approved, as defined in NFPA 70, by authorities having jurisdiction for use in conduit assemblies, and compounded for use to lubricate and protect threaded conduit joints from corrosion and to enhance their conductivity.

2.2 NONMETALLIC CONDUITS AND FITTINGS

A. Nonmetallic Conduit:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    a. AFC Cable Systems; a part of Atkore International.
    b. CANTEX INC.
    c. Condux International, Inc.
    d. Electri-Flex Company.
    e. RACO; Hubbell.
    f. Thomas & Betts Corporation; A Member of the ABB Group.

B. Listing and Labeling: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
    1. ENT: Comply with NEMA TC 13 and UL 1653.
    2. RNC: Type EPC-40-PVC, complying with NEMA TC 2 and UL 651 unless otherwise indicated.
    3. LFNC: Comply with UL 1660.

C. Nonmetallic Fittings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. AFC Cable Systems; a part of Atkore International.
   b. CANTEX INC.
   c. Condux International, Inc.
   d. Electri-Flex Company.
   e. RACO; Hubbell.
   f. Thomas & Betts Corporation; A Member of the ABB Group.
2. Fittings, General: Listed and labeled for type of conduit, location, and use.
3. Fittings for ENT and RNC: Comply with NEMA TC 3; match to conduit or tubing type and material.
4. Fittings for LFNC: Comply with UL 514B.
5. Solvents and Adhesives: As recommended by conduit manufacturer.

2.3 BOXES, ENCLOSURES, AND CABINETS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   1. Crouse-Hinds, an Eaton business.
   2. Erickson Electrical Equipment Company.
   3. Hoffman; a brand of Pentair Equipment Protection.
   4. Hubbell Incorporated.
   5. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
   6. Milbank Manufacturing Co.
   7. O-Z/Gedney; a brand of Emerson Industrial Automation.
   8. Thomas & Betts Corporation; A Member of the ABB Group.
   9. Wiremold / Legrand.

B. General Requirements for Boxes, Enclosures, and Cabinets: Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets installed in wet locations shall be listed for use in wet locations.

C. Sheet Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 1 and UL 514A.

D. Cast-Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1, ferrous alloy,Type FD, with gasketed cover.

E. Luminaire Outlet Boxes: Nonadjustable, designed for attachment of luminaire weighing 50 lb. Outlet boxes designed for attachment of luminaires weighing more than 50 lb shall be listed and marked for the maximum allowable weight.

F. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA OS 1.

G. Cast-Metal Access, Pull, and Junction Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 1773, cast aluminum with gasketed cover.

H. Box extensions used to accommodate new building finishes shall be of same material as recessed box.

I. Device Box Dimensions: 4-inches square by 2-1/8-inches deep.

J. Gang-able boxes are allowed.

K. Hinged-Cover Enclosures: Comply with UL 50 and NEMA 250, Type 1 with continuous-hinge cover with flush latch unless otherwise indicated.

1. Metal Enclosures: Steel, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
2. Interior Panels: Steel; all sides finished with manufacturer's standard enamel.

L. Cabinets:
1. NEMA 250, Type 1 galvanized-steel box with removable interior panel and removable front, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
2. Hinged door in front cover with flush latch and concealed hinge.
3. Key latch to match panelboards.
4. Metal barriers to separate wiring of different systems and voltage.
5. Accessory feet where required for freestanding equipment.
6. Nonmetallic cabinets shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 RACEWAY APPLICATION

A. Outdoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:

1. Exposed Conduit: GRC.
2. Concealed Conduit, Aboveground: GRC.
3. Underground Conduit: Type EPC-80-PVC, direct buried.
4. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): LFMC.
5. Boxes and Enclosures, Aboveground: NEMA 250, Type 3R.

B. Indoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated.

1. Exposed, Not Subject to Physical Damage: EMT.
2. Exposed and Subject to Severe Physical Damage: GRC.
3. Concealed in Ceilings and Interior Walls and Partitions: MC.
4. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): FMC, except use LFMC in damp or wet locations.
5. Damp or Wet Locations: GRC.
6. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, except use NEMA 250, Type 4 stainless steel in institutional and commercial kitchens and damp or wet locations.

C. Minimum Raceway Size: 1/2-inch trade size.

D. Raceway Fittings: Compatible with raceways and suitable for use and location.

1. Rigid and Intermediate Steel Conduit: Use threaded rigid steel conduit fittings unless otherwise indicated. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
2. EMT: Use setscrew, steel fittings. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
3. Flexible Conduit: Use only fittings listed for use with flexible conduit. Comply with NEMA FB 2.20.

E. Do not install aluminum conduits, boxes, or fittings in contact with concrete or earth.

F. Do not install nonmetallic conduit where ambient temperature exceeds 120 deg F.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except where requirements on Drawings or in this article are stricter. Comply with NECA 102 for aluminum conduits. Comply with NFPA 70 limitations for types of raceways allowed in specific occupancies and number of floors.

B. Keep raceways at least 6-inches away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal raceway runs above water and steam piping.

C. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for hangers and supports.

D. Arrange stub-ups so curved portions of bends are not visible above finished slab.

E. Install no more than the equivalent of three 90-degree bends in any conduit run except for control wiring conduits, for which fewer bends are allowed. Support within 12-inches of changes in direction.

F. Conceal conduit and EMT within finished walls, ceilings, and floors wherever possible unless otherwise indicated. Install conduits parallel or perpendicular to building lines.

G. Support conduit within 12-inches of enclosures to which attached.

H. Raceways Embedded in Slabs:

1. Run conduit larger than 1-inch trade size, parallel or at right angles to main reinforcement. Where at right angles to reinforcement, place conduit close to slab support. Secure raceways to reinforcement at maximum 10-footintervals.
2. Arrange raceways to cross building expansion joints at right angles with expansion fittings.
3. Arrange raceways to keep a minimum of 2-inches of concrete cover in all directions.
4. Do not embed threadless fittings in concrete unless specifically approved by Architect for each specific location.

I. Stub-ups to Above Recessed Ceilings:

1. Use EMT, IMC, or RMC for raceways.
2. Use a conduit bushing or insulated fitting to terminate stub-ups not terminated in hubs or in an enclosure.

J. Threaded Conduit Joints, Exposed to Wet, Damp, Corrosive, or Outdoor Conditions: Apply listed compound to threads of raceway and fittings before making up joints. Follow compound manufacturer's written instructions.

K. Coat field-cut threads on PVC-coated raceway with a corrosion-preventing conductive compound prior to assembly.

L. Raceway Terminations at Locations Subject to Moisture or Vibration: Use insulating bushings to protect conductors including conductors smaller than No. 4 AWG.

M. Terminate threaded conduits into threaded hubs or with locknuts on inside and outside of boxes or cabinets. Install bushings on conduits up to 1-1/4-

inch trade size and insulated throat metal bushings on 1-1/2-inch trade size and larger conduits terminated with locknuts. Install insulated throat metal grounding bushings on service conduits.

N. Install pull wires in empty raceways. Use polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than 200-lb tensile strength. Leave at least 12-inches of slack at each end of pull wire. Cap underground raceways designated as spare above grade alongside raceways in use.

O. Install raceway sealing fittings at accessible locations according to NFPA 70 and fill them with listed sealing compound. For concealed raceways, install each fitting in a flush steel box with a blank cover plate having a finish similar to that of adjacent plates or surfaces.

P. Install devices to seal raceway interiors at accessible locations. Locate seals so no fittings or boxes are between the seal and the following changes of environments. Seal the interior of all raceways at the following points:

1. Where conduits pass from warm to cold locations.
2. Where an underground service raceway enters a building or structure.
3. Where otherwise required by NFPA 70.

Q. Expansion-Joint Fittings:

1. Install in each run of aboveground RNC that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 30 deg F and that has straight-run length that exceeds 25 feet.
2. Install type and quantity of fittings that accommodate temperature change listed for each of the following locations:
    a. Outdoor Locations Not Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 125 deg F temperature change.
    b. Outdoor Locations Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 155 deg F temperature change.
    c. Indoor Spaces Connected with Outdoors without Physical Separation: 125 deg F temperature change.
3. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.0004- inch per foot of length of straight run per degree F of temperature change for PVC conduits.
4. Install expansion fittings at all locations where conduits cross building or structure expansion joints.
5. Install each expansion-joint fitting with position, mounting, and piston setting selected according to manufacturer's written instructions for conditions at specific location at time of

installation. Install conduit supports to allow for expansion movement.

R. Flexible Conduit Connections: Comply with NEMA RV 3. Use a maximum of 72-inches of flexible conduit for recessed and semi-recessed luminaires, equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, or movement; and for transformers and motors.

1. Use LFMC in damp or wet locations subject to severe physical damage.
2. Use LFMC or LFNC in damp or wet locations not subject to severe physical damage.

S. Mount boxes at heights indicated on Drawings. If mounting heights of boxes are not individually indicated, give priority to ADA requirements. Install boxes with height measured to center of box unless otherwise indicated.

T. Recessed Boxes in Masonry Walls: Saw-cut opening for box in center of cell of masonry block and install box flush with surface of wall. Prepare block surfaces to provide a flat surface for a rain tight connection between the box and cover plate or the supported equipment and box.

U. Horizontally separate boxes mounted on opposite sides of walls so they are not in the same vertical channel.

V. Locate boxes so that cover or plate will not span different building finishes.

W. Support boxes of three gangs or more from more than one side by spanning two framing members or mounting on brackets specifically designed for the purpose.

X. Fasten junction and pull boxes to or support from building structure. Do not support boxes by conduits.

3.3 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies.

3.4 FIRESTOPPING

A. Install fire stopping at penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies.

3.5 PROTECTION

A. Protect coatings, finishes, and cabinets from damage and deterioration.

1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint r ecommended by manufacturer.
2. Repair damage to PVC coatings or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

******END OF SECTION******

SECTION 260553
IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Color and legend requirements for raceways, conductors, and warning labels and signs.
2. Labels.
3. Bands and tubes.
4. Tapes and stencils.
5. Tags.
6. Signs.
7. Cable ties.
8. Paint for identification.
9. Fasteners for labels and signs.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with ASME A13.1.

B. Comply with NFPA 70.

C. Comply with ANSI Z535.4 for safety signs and labels.

D. Comply with requirements for arc-flash warning labels.

E. Adhesive-attached labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers, shall comply with UL 969.

2.2 COLOR AND LEGEND REQUIREMENTS

A. Raceways and Cables Carrying Circuits at 600 V or Less:

1. Black letters on an orange field.
2. Legend: Indicate voltage.

B. Color-Coding for Phase-Identification, 600 V or Less: Use colors listed below for ungrounded service, feeder and branch-circuit] conductors.

1. Color shall be factory applied or field applied for sizes larger than No. 8 AWG if authorities having jurisdiction permit.
2. Colors for 208/120-V Circuits:
   a. Phase A: Black.
   b. Phase B: Red.
   c. Phase C: Blue.
3. Color for Neutral: White or gray.
4. Color for Equipment Grounds: Green.

C. Warning Label Colors:

1. Identify system voltage with black letters on an orange background.

D. Warning labels and signs shall include, but are not limited to, the following legends:

1. Workspace Clearance Warning: "WARNING - OSHA REGULATION - AREA IN FRONT OF ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT MUST BE KEPT CLEAR FOR 36-INCHES."

E. Equipment Identification Labels:

1. Black letters on a white field.

2.3 LABELS

A. Self-Adhesive Labels: Polyester or Vinyl, thermal, transfer-printed, 3-mil-thick, multicolor, weather- and UV-resistant, pressure-sensitive adhesive labels, configured for intended use and location.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
   a. Brady Corporation.
   b. Brother International Corporation.
   c. Ideal Industries, Inc.

d. Panduit Corp.

2. Minimum Nominal Size:
   a. 1-1/2 by 6-inches for raceway and conductors.
   b. 3-1/2 by 5-inches for equipment.
   c. As required by authorities having jurisdiction.

2.4 TAPES AND STENCILS

A. Marker Tapes: Vinyl or vinyl-cloth, self-adhesive wraparound type, with circuit identification legend machine printed by thermal transfer or equivalent process.
   1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
      a. Champion America.
      b. Ideal Industries, Inc.
      c. Panduit Corp.

B. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Tape: Colored, heavy duty, waterproof, fade resistant; not less than 3 mils thick by 1 to 2-inches wide; compounded for outdoor use.

   1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
      a. Brady Corporation.
      b. emedco.
      c. Marking Services, Inc.

C. Underground-Line Warning Tape:

   1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
      a. Brady Corporation.
      b. Ideal Industries, Inc.
      c. Marking Services, Inc.
   2. Tape:
      a. Recommended by manufacturer for the method of installation and suitable to identify and locate underground electrical and communications utility lines.
      b. Printing on tape shall be permanent and shall not be damaged by burial operations.
      c. Tape material and ink shall be chemically inert and not subject to degradation when exposed to acids, alkalis, and other destructive substances commonly found in soils.

3. Color and Printing:
    a. Comply with ANSI Z535.1, ANSI Z535.2, ANSI Z535.3, ANSI Z535.4, and ANSI Z535.5.
    b. Inscriptions for Red-Colored Tapes: "ELECTRIC LINE, HIGH VOLTAGE".
    c. Inscriptions for Orange-Colored Tapes: "TELEPHONE CABLE, CATV CABLE, COMMUNICATIONS CABLE, OPTICAL FIBER CABLE".

2.5 SIGNS

A. Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Plastic Signs:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    a. Brady Corporation.
    b. Carlton Industries, LP.
    c. Emedco.
2. Engraved legend.
3. Thickness:
    a. For signs up to 20 sq. in., minimum 1/16-inch thick.
    b. For signs larger than 20 sq. in., 1/8-inch thick.
    c. Engraved legend with black letters on white face.
    d. Framed with mitered acrylic molding and arranged for attachment at applicable equipment.

2.6 CABLE TIES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

1. Hellermann Tyton.
2. Ideal Industries, Inc.
3. Marking Services, Inc.
4. Panduit Corp.

B. General-Purpose Cable Ties: Fungus inert, self-extinguishing, one piece, self-locking, and Type 6/6 nylon.

1. Minimum Width: 3/16-inch.
2. Tensile Strength at 73 Deg F according to ASTM D 638: 12,000 psi.
3. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F.

4. Color: Black, except where used for color-coding.

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

A. Paint: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for paint materials and application requirements. Retain paint system applicable for surface material and location (exterior or interior).

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Verify and coordinate identification names, abbreviations, colors, and other features with requirements in other Sections requiring identification applications, Drawings, Shop Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual. Use consistent designations throughout Project.

B. Verify identity of each item before installing identification products.

C. Coordinate identification with Project Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual.

D. Apply identification devices to surfaces that require finish after completing finish work.

E. Install signs with approved legend to facilitate proper identification, operation, and maintenance of electrical systems and connected items.

F. Self-Adhesive Identification Products: Before applying electrical identification products, clean substrates of substances that could impair bond, using materials and methods recommended by manufacturer of identification product.

G. Auxiliary Electrical Systems Conductor Identification: Identify field-installed alarm, control, and signal connections.

H. Elevated Components: Increase sizes of labels, signs, and letters to those appropriate for viewing from the floor.

I. Accessible Fittings for Raceways: Identify the covers of each junction and pull box of the following systems with the wiring system legend and system voltage. System legends shall be as follows:

1. Field-Applied, Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Apply in half-lapped turns for a minimum distance of 6-inches where splices or

taps are made. Apply last two turns of tape with no tension to prevent possible unwinding.

J. Tape and Stencil: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for surface preparation and paint application.

K. Underground Line Warning Tape:

1. During backfilling of trenches, install continuous underground-line warning tape directly above cable or raceway at 6 to 8-inches below finished grade. Use multiple tapes where width of multiple lines installed in a common trench exceeds 16-inches overall.
2. Install underground-line warning tape for direct-buried cables and cables in raceways.

L. Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Plastic Signs:

1. Attach signs and plastic labels that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to the location and substrate.
2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch-high letters on minimum 1-1/2-inch-high sign; where two lines of text are required, use signs minimum 2-inches high.

M. Cable Ties: General purpose, for attaching tags, except as listed below:

1. Outdoors: UV-stabilized nylon.

3.2 IDENTIFICATION SCHEDULE

A. Locations of Underground Lines: Underground-line warning tape for power, lighting, communication, and control wiring.

B. Instructional Signs: Self-adhesive labels, including the color code for grounded and ungrounded conductors.

C. Warning Labels for Indoor Cabinets, Boxes, and Enclosures for Power and Lighting: Self-adhesive equipment labels.

1. Apply to exterior of door, cover, or other access.
2. For equipment with multiple power or control sources, apply to door or cover of equipment, including, but not limited to, the following:
   a. Controls with external control power connections.

D. Arc Flash Warning Labeling: Self-adhesive labels.

E. Operating Instruction Signs: Laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs.

F. Equipment Identification Labels:

1. Indoor Equipment: Laminated acrylic or melamine plastic sign.
2. Outdoor Equipment: Laminated acrylic or melamine sign.

******END OF SECTION******

SECTION 262416
PANELBOARDS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Distribution panelboards.
2. Lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboards.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. MCCB: Molded-case circuit breaker

B. SPD: Surge protective device.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of panelboard.

B. Shop Drawings: For each panelboard and related equipment.

1. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details.
2. Detail enclosure types including mounting and anchorage, environmental protection, knockouts, corner treatments, covers and doors, gaskets, hinges, and locks.
3. Detail bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.
4. Short-circuit current rating of panelboards and overcurrent protective devices.
5. Include evidence of NRTL listing for SPD as installed in panelboard.
6. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.
7. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Panelboard schedules for installation in panelboards.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and maintenance data.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Service Conditions: NEMA PB 1, usual service conditions, as follows:

1. Ambient temperatures within limits specified.
2. Altitude not exceeding 6600 feet.

1.7 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace panelboards that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Panelboard Warranty Period: 18 months from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PANELBOARDS COMMON REQUIREMENTS

A. Fabricate and test panelboards according to IEEE 344 to withstand seismic forces.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

C. Comply with NEMA PB 1.

D. Comply with NFPA 70.

E. Enclosures: Flush and Surface -mounted, dead-front cabinets.

1. Rated for environmental conditions at installed location.
   a. Indoor Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
   b. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
   c. Other Wet or Damp Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4.
2. Height: 84-inches maximum.
3. Front: Secured to box with concealed trim clamps. For surface-mounted fronts, match box dimensions; for flush-mounted fronts, overlap box. Trims shall cover all live parts and shall have no exposed hardware.
4. Hinged Front Cover: Entire front trim hinged to box and with standard door within hinged trim cover. Trims shall cover all live parts and shall have no exposed hardware.

F. Incoming Mains Location: Top or Bottom.

G. Phase, Neutral, and Ground Buses: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.

H. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.

1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
2. Main and Neutral Lugs: Mechanical type, with a lug on the neutral bar for each pole in the panelboard.
3. Ground Lugs and Bus-Configured Terminators: Mechanical type, with a lug on the bar for each pole in the panelboard.

I. Future Devices: Panelboards shall have mounting brackets, bus connections, filler plates, and necessary appurtenances required for future installation of devices.

J. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating: Fully rated to interrupt symmetrical short-circuit current available at terminals. Assembly listed by an NRTL for 100 percent interrupting capacity.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Seismic Performance: Panelboards shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.

1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."

B. Surge Suppression: Factory installed as an integral part of indicated panelboards, complying with UL 1449 SPD Type 2.

2.3 POWER PANELBOARDS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

1. Eaton.
2. General Electric Company; GE Energy Management - Electrical Distribution.
3. Square D; by Schneider Electric.

B. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, distribution type.

C. Doors: Secured with vault-type latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.

1. For doors more than 36-inches high, provide two latches, keyed alike.

D. Mains: Circuit breaker.

E. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices for Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes 125 A and Smaller: Plug-in circuit breakers or Bolt-on circuit breakers.

F. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices for Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes Larger than 125 A: Bolt-on circuit breakers.

2.4 LIGHTING AND APPLIANCE BRANCH-CIRCUIT PANELBOARDS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

1. Eaton.
2. General Electric Company; GE Energy Management - Electrical Distribution.
3. SIEMENS Industry, Inc.; Energy Management Division.
4. Square D; by Schneider Electric.

B. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, lighting and appliance branch-circuit type.

C. Mains: Circuit breaker.

D. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Plug-in or Bolt-on circuit breakers, replaceable without disturbing adjacent units.

E. Doors: Concealed hinges; secured with flush latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.

2.5 DISCONNECTING AND OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. Eaton.
2. General Electric Company; GE Energy Management - Electrical Distribution.
3. SIEMENS Industry, Inc.; Energy Management Division.
4. Square D; by Schneider Electric.

B. MCCB: Comply with UL 489, with interrupting capacity to meet available fault currents.

1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers:
   a. Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads.
   b. Instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits.
   c. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.

2.6 IDENTIFICATION

A. Panelboard Label: Manufacturer's name and trademark, voltage, amperage, number of phases, and number of poles shall be located on the interior of the panelboard door.

B. Breaker Labels: Faceplate shall list current rating, UL and IEC certification standards, and AIC rating.

C. Circuit Directory: Directory card inside panelboard door, mounted in metal frame with transparent protective cover.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Install panelboards and accessories according to NECA 407.

C. Mount top of trim 90-inches above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.

D. Mount panelboard cabinet plumb and rigid without distortion of box.

E. Mount recessed panelboards with fronts uniformly flush with wall finish and mating with back box.

F. Install overcurrent protective devices and controllers not already factory installed.

1. Set field-adjustable, circuit-breaker trip ranges.

G. Make grounding connections and bond neutral for services and separately derived systems to ground. Make connections to grounding electrodes, separate grounds for isolated ground bars, and connections to separate ground bars.

H. Install filler plates in unused spaces.

I. Arrange conductors in gutters into groups and bundle and wrap with wire ties.

3.2 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; install warning signs complying with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

B. Create a directory to indicate installed circuit loads; incorporate Owner's final room designations. Obtain approval before installing. Handwritten directories are not acceptable. Install directory inside panelboard door.

C. Panelboard Nameplates: Label each panelboard with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

D. Device Nameplates: Label each branch circuit device in power panelboards with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

E. Install warning signs complying with requirements in Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems" identifying source of remote circuit.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

B. Acceptance Testing Preparation:

1. Test insulation resistance for each panelboard bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
2. Test continuity of each circuit.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test for low-voltage air circuit breakers stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.

D. Panelboards will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

******END OF SECTION******

SECTION 262726
WIRING DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Straight-blade convenience receptacles.
2. GFCI receptacles.
3. Toggle switches.
4. Wall plates.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. Abbreviations of Manufacturers' Names:

1. Cooper: Copper Wiring Devices; Division of Cooper Industries, Inc.
2. Hubbell: Hubbell Incorporated: Wiring Devices-Kellems.
3. Leviton: Leviton Mfg. Company, Inc.
4. Pass & Seymour: Pass& Seymour/Legrand.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: List of legends and description of materials and process used for pre-marking wall plates.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and maintenance data.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL WIRING-DEVICE REQUIREMENTS

A. Wiring Devices, Components, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Comply with NFPA 70.

C. Devices that are manufactured for use with modular plug-in connectors may be substituted under the following conditions:

1. Connectors shall comply with UL 2459 and shall be made with stranding building wire.
2. Devices shall comply with the requirements in this Section.

D. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of wiring device and associated wall plate from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 STRAIGHT-BLADE RECEPTACLES

A. Duplex Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 Configuration 5-20R, UL 498, and FS W-C-596.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
   a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
   b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
   c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
   d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).

2.3 GFCI RECEPTACLES

A. General Description:

1. 125 V, 20 A, straight blade, feed-through type.
2. Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 Configuration 5-20R, UL 498, UL 943 Class A, and FS W-C-596.
3. Include indicator light that shows when the GFCI has malfunctioned and no longer provides proper GFCI protection.

B. Duplex GFCI Convenience Receptacles:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
   a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
   b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
   c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
   d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).

2.4 TOGGLE SWITCHES

A. Comply with NEMA WD 1, UL 20, and FS W-S-896.

B. Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:

1. Single Pole:
    a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
        1) Eaton (Arrow Hart).
        2) Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
        3) Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
        4) Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
2. Two Pole:
    a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
        1) Eaton (Arrow Hart).
        2) Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
        3) Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
        4) Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).

C. Pilot-Light Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    a. Eaton (Arrow Hart).
    b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
    c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
    d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
2. Description: Single pole, with LED-lighted handle, illuminated when switch is off.

2.5 WALL PLATES

A. Single and combination types shall match corresponding wiring devices.

1. Plate-Securing Screws: Metal with head color to match plate finish.
2. Material for Finished Spaces: High-impact thermoplastic in finished spaces.
3. Material for Unfinished Spaces: Galvanized steel.

4. Material for Damp Locations: Cast aluminum with spring-loaded lift cover, listed and labeled for use in wet and damp locations.

B. Wet-Location, Weatherproof Cover Plates: NEMA 250, complying with Type 3R, weather-resistant, die-cast aluminum with lockable cover.

2.6 FINISHES

A. Device Color:

1. Wiring Devices Connected to Normal Power System: As selected by Architect unless otherwise indicated or required by NFPA 70 or device listing.

B. Wall Plate Color: For plastic covers, match device color.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1, including mounting heights listed in that standard, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Coordination with Other Trades:

1. Protect installed devices and their boxes. Do not place wall finish materials over device boxes and do not cut holes for boxes with routers that are guided by riding against outside of boxes.
2. Keep outlet boxes free of plaster, drywall joint compound, mortar, cement, concrete, dust, paint, and other material that may contaminate the raceway system, conductors, and cables.
3. Install device boxes in brick or block walls so that the cover plate does not cross a joint unless the joint is troweled flush with the face of the wall.
4. Install wiring devices after all wall preparation, including painting, is complete.

C. Conductors:

1. Do not strip insulation from conductors until right before they are spliced or terminated on devices.
2. Strip insulation evenly around the conductor using tools designed for the purpose. Avoid scoring or nicking of solid wire or cutting strands from stranded wire.
3. The length of free conductors at outlets for devices shall meet provisions of NFPA 70, Article 300, without pigtails.

4. Existing Conductors:
   a. Cut back and pigtail or replace all damaged conductors.
   b. Straighten conductors that remain and remove corrosion and foreign matter.
   c. Pig tailing existing conductors is permitted, provided the outlet box is large enough.

D. Device Installation:

1. Replace devices that have been in temporary use during construction and that were installed before building finishing operations were complete.
2. Keep each wiring device in its package or otherwise protected until it is time to connect conductors.
3. Do not remove surface protection, such as plastic film and smudge covers, until the last possible moment.
4. Connect devices to branch circuits using pigtails that are not less than 6-inches in length.
5. When there is a choice, use side wiring with binding-head screw terminals. Wrap solid conductor tightly clockwise, two-thirds to three-fourths of the way around terminal screw.
6. Use a torque screwdriver when a torque is recommended or required by manufacturer.
7. When conductors larger than No. 12 AWG are installed on 15- or 20-A circuits, splice No. 12 AWG pigtails for device connections.
8. Tighten unused terminal screws on the device.
9. When mounting into metal boxes, remove the fiber or plastic washers used to hold device-mounting screws in yokes, allowing metal-to-metal contact.

E. Receptacle Orientation:

1. Install ground pin of vertically mounted receptacles down, and on horizontally mounted receptacles to the right.

F. Device Plates: Do not use oversized or extra-deep plates. Repair wall finishes and remount outlet boxes when standard device plates do not fit flush or do not cover rough wall opening.

G. Arrangement of Devices: Unless otherwise indicated, mount flush, with long dimension vertical and with grounding terminal of receptacles on top. Group adjacent switches under single, multi-gang wall plates.

H. GFCI Receptacles: Install non-feed-through-type GFCI receptacles where protection of downstream receptacles is not required.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Test Instruments: Use instruments that comply with UL 1436.

B. Test Instrument for Convenience Receptacles: Digital wiring analyzer with digital readout or illuminated digital-display indicators of measurement.

C. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Tests for Convenience Receptacles:
   a. Line Voltage: Acceptable range is 105 to 132 V.
   b. GFCI Trip: Test for tripping values specified in UL 1436 and UL 943.
   c. Using the test plug, verify that the device and its outlet box are securely mounted.
   d. Correct circuit conditions, remove malfunctioning units and replace with new ones, and retest as specified above.

D. Wiring device will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

******END OF SECTION******

SECTION 262816
ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Fusible switches.
2. Non-fusible switches.
3. Enclosures.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of enclosed switch, circuit breaker, accessory, and component indicated. Include nameplate ratings, dimensioned elevations, sections, weights, and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, accessories, and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
2. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency.

B. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

C. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and maintenance data.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Accredited by NETA.

1.6 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: One year from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Seismic Performance: Enclosed switches and circuit breakers shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.

1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

2.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Source Limitations: Obtain enclosed switches and circuit breakers, overcurrent protective devices, components, and accessories, within same product category, from single manufacturer.

B. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for enclosed switches and circuit breakers, including clearances between enclosures, and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.

C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.

D. Comply with NFPA 70.

2.3 FUSIBLE SWITCHES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

1. Eaton.
2. General Electric Company.

3. SIEMENS Industry, Inc.; Energy Management Division.
4. Square D; by Schneider Electric.

B. Type HD, Heavy Duty:

1. Single throw.
2. Three pole.
3. UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, with clips or bolt pads to accommodate indicated fuses.
4. Lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks and interlocked with cover in closed position.

C. Accessories:

1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
3. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.

2.4 NONFUSIBLE SWITCHES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

1. Eaton.
2. General Electric Company.
3. SIEMENS Industry, Inc.; Energy Management Division.
4. Square D; by Schneider Electric.

B. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Three Pole, Single Throw: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.

C. Accessories:

1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
3. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.

2.5 ENCLOSURES

A. Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers: UL 489, NEMA KS 1, NEMA 250, and UL 50, to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.

B. Enclosure Finish: The enclosure shall be finished with gray baked enamel paint, electrodeposited on cleaned, phosphatized steel (NEMA 250 Type 1).

C. Operating Mechanism: The circuit-breaker operating handle shall be externally operable directly operable through the front cover of the enclosure (NEMA 250 Type 1)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 ENCLOSURE ENVIRONMENTAL RATING APPLICATIONS

A. Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers: Provide enclosures at installed locations with the following environmental ratings.

1. Indoor, Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
2. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
3. Other Wet or Damp, Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of switches, circuit breakers, and components with equipment served and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.

B. Install individual wall-mounted switches and circuit breakers with tops at uniform height unless otherwise indicated.

C. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting of eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from enclosures and components.

D. Install fuses in fusible devices.

E. Comply with NFPA 70 and NECA 1.

F. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges to values indicated on the Drawings.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

A. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
2. Label each enclosure with engraved metal or laminated-plastic nameplate.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections: All testing is to be done by the contractor with the assistance of the manufacturer as required.

B. Tests and Inspections for Switches:

1. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
    a. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
    b. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and clearances.
    c. Verify that the unit is clean.
    d. Verify blade alignment, blade penetration, travel stops, and mechanical operation.
    e. Verify that fuse sizes and types match the Specifications and Drawings.
    f. Verify that each fuse has adequate mechanical support and contact integrity.
    g. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one of the two following methods:
        1) Use a low-resistance ohmmeter.
            a) Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from those of similar bolted connections by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
        2) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method in accordance with manufacturer's published data or NETA ATS Table 100.12.
            a) Bolt-torque levels shall be in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use NETA ATS Table 100.12.
    h. Verify that operation and sequencing of interlocking systems is as described in the Specifications and shown on the Drawings.

i. Verify correct phase barrier installation.
j. Verify lubrication of moving current-carrying parts and moving and sliding surfaces.

2. Electrical Tests:
   a. Perform resistance measurements through bolted connections with a low-resistance ohmmeter. Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
   b. Measure contact resistance across each switchblade fuse holder. Drop values shall not exceed the high level of the manufacturer's published data. If manufacturer's published data are not available, investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
   c. Perform insulation-resistance tests for one minute on each pole, phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with switch closed, and across each open pole. Apply voltage in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use Table 100.1 from the NETA ATS. Investigate values of insulation resistance less than those published in Table 100.1 or as recommended in manufacturer's published data.
   d. Measure fuse resistance. Investigate fuse-resistance values that deviate from each other by more than 15 percent.
   e. Perform ground fault test according to NETA ATS 7.14 "Ground Fault Protection Systems, Low-Voltage."

C. Tests and Inspections for Molded Case Circuit Breakers:

1. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
   a. Verify that equipment nameplate data are as described in the Specifications and shown on the Drawings.
   b. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
   c. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and clearances.
   d. Verify that the unit is clean.
   e. Operate the circuit breaker to ensure smooth operation.
   f. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one of the two following methods:
      1) Use a low-resistance ohmmeter.
         a) Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from those of similar bolted connections by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.

2) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method in accordance with manufacturer's published data or NETA ATS Table 100.12.
   a) Bolt-torque levels shall be in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use NETA ATS Table 100.12.

g. Inspect operating mechanism, contacts, and chutes in unsealed units.

h. Perform adjustments for final protective device settings in accordance with the coordination study.

D. Enclosed switches and circuit breakers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

1. Test procedures used.
2. Include identification of each enclosed switch and circuit breaker tested and describe test results.
3. List deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

******END OF SECTION******